HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 208

PEUGEOT



Access to the Handbook

App Store

ANDROID APP ON Google play

From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyPeugeot APP** smartphone application.

Then select:
- the vehicle,
- the print edition appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.

The **Handbook** is available on the PEUGEOT website, in the "MY PEUGEOT" section or at the following address: http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Access to the **Handbook**.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Peugeot 208.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical data, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document, you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Warranty and Maintenance Record which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

Key

- Safety warning
- Additional information
- Contributes to the protection of the environment
- Left-hand drive vehicle
- Right-hand drive vehicle

Overview

Instruments and controls 4

Eco-driving

1 Instruments

Instrument panels 8
Warning and indicator lamps 10
Indicators 20
Trip computer 24
Setting the time and date 26
Lighting dimmer 27

2 Access

Remote control key 28
Central locking 30
Back-up procedures 30
Boot 32
Alarm 33
Electric windows 34

3 Ease of use and comfort

PEUGEOT i-Cockpit 36
Steering wheel adjustment 36
Mirrors 36
Front seats 38
One-piece bench seat 40
2/3-1/3 split rear bench seat 40
Head restraints 41
Advice on heating and air conditioning 41
Heating 42
Manual air conditioning 43
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 43
Recirculation of interior air 45
Front demisting – defrosting 45
Rear screen demisting - defrosting 46
Courtesy lamp 46
Interior ambient lighting 47
Sunroof blind 47
Interior fittings 48
Boot fittings 49
Rear shelf 50

4 Lighting and visibility

Lighting control stalk 51
Headlamp beam height adjustment 54
Cornering lighting 55
Wiper control stalk 55
Changing a wiper blade 57

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 58
Hazard warning lamps 58
Emergency or assistance call 59
Electronic stability control (ESC) 60
Seat belts 62
Airbags 65
Child seats 68
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 68
ISOFIX mountings and child seats 74
Child lock 79

6 Driving

Driving advice 80
Starting – Switching off the engine 81
Parking brake 82
Manual gearbox 83
Automatic gearbox (EAT6) 84
Gear shift indicator 86
Hill start assist 87
Stop & Start 87
Under-inflation detection 89
Speed limiter 91
Cruise control 93
Memorising speeds 95
Active City Brake 96
Parking sensors 98
Reversing camera 100
Park Assist 100

7 Practical information

Compatibility of fuels 106
Fuel tank 107
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 108
Snow chains 108
Towing device 109
Load reduction mode 109
Energy economy mode 110
Fitting roof bars 110
Bonnet 111
Engine 112
Checking levels 112
Checks 114
AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines) 117

8 In the event of a breakdown

Warning triangle 121
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 121
Temporary puncture repair kit 122
Spare wheel 125
Changing a bulb 129
Changing a fuse 133
12 V battery 137
Towing 140

9 Technical data

Engine technical data and towed loads 142
Engines and towed loads - PETROL 143
Engines and towed loads - DIESEL 145
Dimensions 147
Identification markings 148

Audio equipment and telematics

Audio system
Bluetooth audio system
PEUGEOT Connect Radio
PEUGEOT Connect Nav

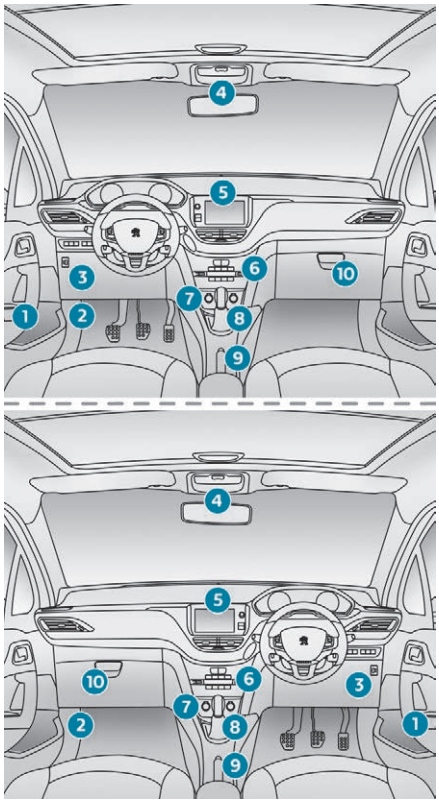
Alphabetical index

Access to additional videos



bit.ly/helpPSA

Instruments and controls



1

Door mirrors
Electric windows

2

Bonnet release

3

Dashboard fuses

4

Interior rear view mirror
Courtesy lamp
Interior ambient lighting
Emergency or assistance call
Active City Brake

5

Touch screen
Audio system
Bluetooth audio system
Setting the date and time

6

Ventilation
Heating
Manual air conditioning
Automatic air conditioning
Front demisting/defrosting
Rear screen demisting/defrosting

7

USB socket
12 V socket

8

Manual gearbox
Automatic gearbox
Gear shift indicator

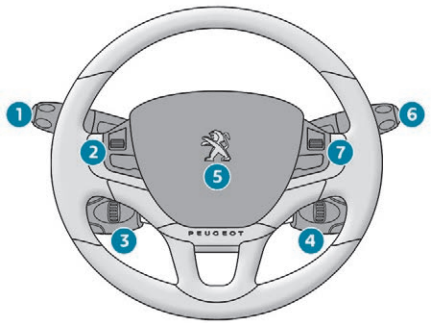
9

Parking brake

10

Glove box
Fuses

Steering mounted controls



1
Lighting control stalk Direction indicators

2
Steering mounted controls for the touch screen: volume, source change

3
Cruise control Speed limiter Memorising speeds

4
Steering mounted controls for the audio system

5
Driver front airbag Horn

6
Wiper control stalk Trip computer

7
Steering mounted controls for the touch screen

Side switch panel

(Depending on version)





Activation of Park Assist

or



Deactivation of the rear parking sensors



Deactivation of the DSC/ASR system



Deactivation of Stop & Start



Reinitialisation of the tyre under-inflation detection (without touch screen)



Deactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring



Activation of the electric child lock



Headlamp beam height adjustment

Central switch panel





Central locking



Hazard warning lamps

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. When accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls when not required, if they are not automatically controlled.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items at the back of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to bring your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions back in line with the regulations.

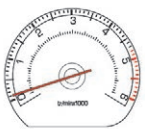
When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Instrument panels

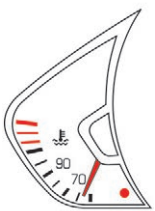


Rev counter



Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm), graduation depends on the engine.

Indicator



Engine coolant temperature indicator.



Control button

/000

Servicing reminder.

Setting the time.
Reset the function selected (service indicator or trip recorder).
Depending on version:
- Setting the time.
- Digital speedometer.

Instrument panel lighting

Adjusting the intensity of the general lighting.

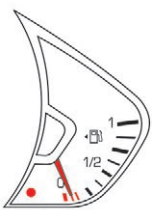


Speedometer



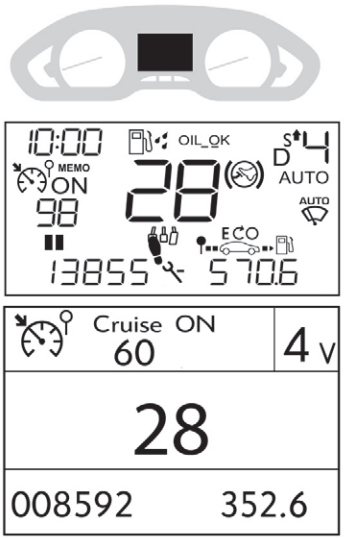
Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).

Gauge



Fuel gauge.

Displays



Cruise control settings.

Speed limiter settings.

Service indicator.

13855 km — Total distance recorder (miles or km).

570.6 mph km/h km/l — Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

OIL — Engine oil level indicator (depending on version).

Gear shift indicator with a manual gearbox.

Selector position and gear with an automatic gearbox.

28 mph km/h — Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).

Displaying/hiding the digital speedometer
(Depending on version)

/000 — Hold this button down. "- -" or "0" is displayed.

Press this button to display or hide the digital speedometer.

Trip computer

Stop & Start time counter.

Remaining driving range.

Current or average fuel consumption.

Average speed of the vehicle.

Distance travelled by the vehicle.

Gearbox

P — Park.

R — Reverse.

N — Neutral.

D — Automatic mode (Drive).

M — Sequential mode.

\+ - — Change up/down a gear.

S Sport programme.

Snow programme (depending on engine).

Trip recorder reset



With the trip distance displayed, press the button for a few seconds.

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

Persistent warning lamp

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates a fault that needs further investigation, using any associated message and the description of the warning lamp in the documentation.

Where a lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

(1):**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Red warning/indicator lamps				
STOP	**STOP**	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Indicates a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or a major electrical fault.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
+ STOP	**Engine diagnostic system**	Fixed.	A major engine fault has been detected.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
90 70	**Maximum engine coolant temperature**	Fixed, with the needle in the red zone.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up to the required level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
− +	**Battery charge**	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Door(s) open**	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	One of the doors or the tailgate is not fully closed (speed below 6 mph [10 km/h]).	
		Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	One of the doors or the tailgate is not fully closed (speed above 6 mph [10 km/h]).	
	**Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened**	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	
	**Parking brake**	Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	
	**Brakes**	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Carry out (1), then top up with brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
		Fixed.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	Carry out (1) and then (2).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Orange warning/indicator lamps			
 **Service**	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter. For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).
	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).
	Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	Service is overdue.	Only with BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
 **Diesel engine pre-heating**	Temporarily on.	When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
 **Foot on the clutch**	Fixed.	Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.	Fully depress the clutch pedal.

(1):**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Foot on the brake**	Fixed.	Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.	With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**.
	**Anti-lock braking system (ABS)**	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)**	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.	
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	**Power steering**	Fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
	**Low fuel level**	Fixed, with the needle in the red zone.	When it first comes on, **around 5 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.
		Flashing, with the needle in the red zone.	Very little fuel remains in the tank.	**Never drive until completely empty**, this could damage the emissions and injection systems.
	**Airbags**	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Front passenger airbag (OFF)**	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the "**OFF**" position.	You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).
	**Under-inflation**	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.
		Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.	The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored. As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).
	**Engine diagnostic system**	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Carry out (2) **without fail**.
		Fixed.	The emissions control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.
	**Engine diagnostic system**	Fixed.	A minor engine fault has been detected.	Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**AdBlue® (with 1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)**	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible, or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).	You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown**, or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2). It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
AdBlue	**AdBlue® (with 1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)**	On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).	Top up the AdBlue®.
		Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 500 and 60 miles (800 and 100 km).	Top up the AdBlue® **as soon as possible**, or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 60 miles (100 km).	You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
AdBlue + +	**SCR emissions control system**	Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine-diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Depending on the message displayed, you can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.	Carry out (3) as soon as possible to **avoid starting being prevented**.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine-diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	An engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system).	To start the engine, carry out (2).
	Rear foglamp	Fixed.	The lamp is on.	

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Green warning/indicator lamps				
ECO	**Stop & Start**	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.	
		Flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.	
AUTO	**Automatic wiping**	Fixed.	Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.	
	Front foglamps	Fixed.	The front foglamps are on.	
	Direction indicators	Flashing with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.	
	Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
	Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
Blue warning/indicator lamps				
	Main beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	

Indicators

Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:

- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

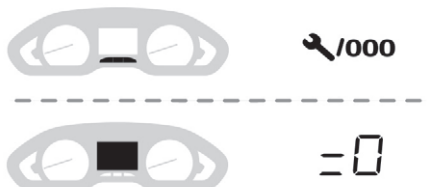
The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/ Observations
	**Service spanner**	Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).	Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
	**Service spanner flashing**	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (For BlueHDi Diesel versions, associated with the Service warning lamp).	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.
If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

☞ switch off the ignition,



☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder reset button,
☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
☞ release the button when "**=0**" is displayed; the spanner disappears.

If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

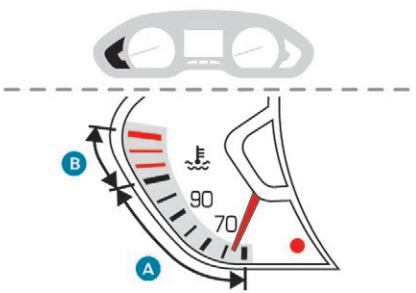
Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.



☞ Press the trip distance recorder reset button.
The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine coolant temperature



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature of the engine coolant is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature of the engine coolant is too high; the maximum temperature and the central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message in the screen.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil level indicator

(depending on version)

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level insufficient

This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel, accompanied by the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault

This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.
Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.

/000 Pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range.

Remaining range between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km) (1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)

AdBlue

When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on for about thirty seconds, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

Remaining range between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km) (1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)

AdBlue

When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed approximately every 185 miles (300 km) until the level is topped up.
The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

Remaining range between 500 and 60 miles (800 and 100 km) (1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)

AdBlue

When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 60 miles (100 km) until the level is topped up.
It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Remaining range less than 375 miles (600 km) (1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)

AdBlue

When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the permanent lighting of the Service warning lamp, an audible signal and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Remaining range less than 60 miles (100 km) (1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 6 miles (10 km) until the AdBlue tank is topped up.
It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 685 miles (1,100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During the permitted driving phase (between 685 and 0 miles (1,100 and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 31 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 185 miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR emissions control system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

Starting prevented



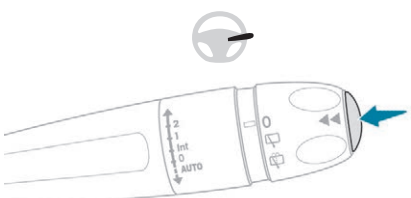
Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system does not allow the engine to be started.

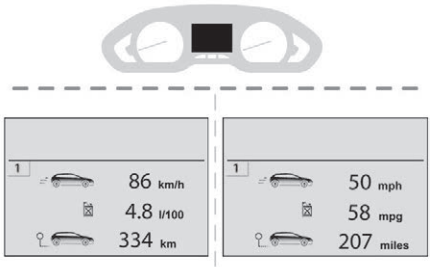
To be able to restart the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Trip computer

Instrument panel screen



☞ Each press on the end of the **wiper control stalk** displays the information in turn.

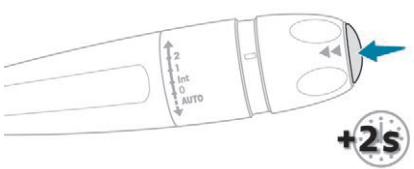


- Trip **1** with:
  - the average speed,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled,

  for the first trip.
- Trip **2** with:
  - the average speed,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled,

  for the second trip.
- The current information with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter.

Reset trip



☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.

Trips 1 and 2 are independent and are used identically.

For example, trip 1 can be used for daily figures and trip 2 for monthly figures.

With touch screen

MENU The information is accessible via the **Driving/Vehicle**.



Display of information on the touch screen



Permanent display:

☞ Select the "**Applications**" menu, then the "**Vehicle apps**" tab, then "**Trip computer**".

The trip computer information is displayed in tabs.

☞ Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

Temporary display in a specific window:

☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk to access the information and display the different tabs.

The current information tab with:

- The range.
- The current fuel consumption.
- The Stop & Start time counter.

The trip "**1**" tab with:

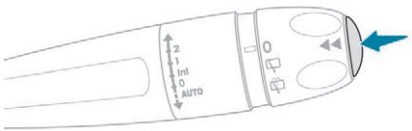
- The average speed for the first trip.
- The average fuel consumption.
- The distance travelled.

The trip "**2**" tab with:

- The average speed for the second trip.
- The average fuel consumption.
- The distance travelled.

Trip reset





☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button or on the end of the wiper control stalk.

Trips "**1**" and "**2**" are independent and are used identically.

For example, trip "**1**" can be used for daily figures and trip "**2**" for monthly figures.

A few definitions

Range

(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

Dashes are displayed when the range falls below 19 miles (30 km).

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated over the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Total time in stop mode

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter adds up the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Setting the time and date

Instrument panel



- Each press of this button toggles between the following settings:
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour format.

With PEUGEOT Connect Radio

- Select the **Settings** menu in the upper banner of the touch screen.
- Select "**System configuration**".
- Select "**Date and time**".
- Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".
- Choose the display formats.
- Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- Confirm with "**OK**".

With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Setting of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with the GPS is deactivated.

- Select the "**Settings**" menu.
- Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.
- Select "**Setting the time-date**".
- Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.
- Adjust the date and time using the numeric keypad and confirm.
- In the selected tab, press this key to confirm.

Additional settings

You can choose:
- To change the date format (DD/MM/YYYY, YYYY/MM/DD, etc.)
- To change the time format (12h/24h).
- To change the time zone.
- To activate or deactivate synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country). The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Lighting dimmer



System for the manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and the touch screen to suit the ambient light level.

With two buttons

Lighting switched on:



☞ Press this button to raise the level of brightness.



☞ Press this button to lower it.

Release the button once the desired level of brightness is reached.

With one button

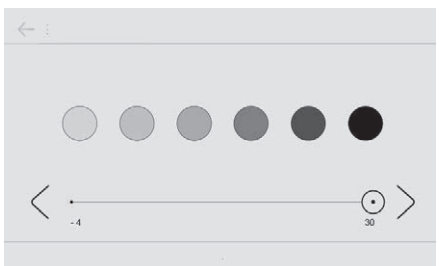


☞ Press this button to adjust the brightness.

☞ Release the button once the desired level of brightness is reached.

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode (daytime running lamps on), pressing the button does not have any effect.

With touch screen

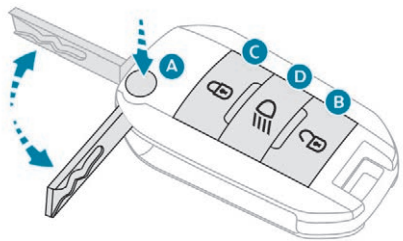


☞ In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**".
☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

The brightness can be adjusted differently for day mode (lighting control stalk in position "**0**") and night mode (lighting control stalk in any other position).

Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance.
It also ensures the localisation and starting of the vehicle, as well as theft protection.



A. Unfolding/Folding.
B. Unlocking.
Disarming the alarm.
C. Locking.
Locating the vehicle.
Arming the alarm.
D. Guide-me-home lighting.

Unfolding/Folding the key

☞ Press button **A** to unfold/fold the key.

! If you do not press the button, you risk damaging the remote control.

Unlocking the vehicle

With the key

☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock **towards the front of the vehicle** to unlock.

With the remote control



☞ Press this button to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the welcome lighting comes on.

Unlocking with the key does not deactivate the alarm.

Selective unlocking of the driver's door

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

MENU

With the touch screen, selective unlocking can be configured from the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



☞ Press this button to unlock the driver's door only. Press twice in quick succession to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Locking the vehicle

With the key

☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock **towards the rear** of the vehicle to lock it.

i Check that the doors and boot are fully closed.

With the remote control



☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

Locking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not work; the vehicle locks, then immediately unlocks, identifiable by the locks making a rebound sound.

When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked without the opening of a door or the boot, it will automatically lock itself again after thirty seconds.

The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated via the vehicle's configuration menu.

Locating your vehicle



☞ A press switches on the vehicle's lighting and flashes the direction indicators for a few seconds to help you locate your vehicle.

Guide-me-home lighting



Make a long press on this button to operate the guide-me-home lighting (switching on the sidelamps, dipped beams and number plate lamps).

A second press before the end of the timed period cancels the guide-me-home lighting.

Deadlocking

Deadlocking deactivates the exterior and interior door controls as well as the central locking button on the dashboard.
You must therefore never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

With the key

☞ Turn the key to the rear in the driver's door lock.
☞ Turn the key to the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

With the remote control



☞ Press this button once to lock the vehicle fully.
☞ Press this button again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately 2 seconds.
Depending on the version you have, the electric door mirrors fold at the same time.

Advice

Remote control
The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. It might stop working. It will then be necessary to reinitialise it again.
The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Anti-theft protection
Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.
For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

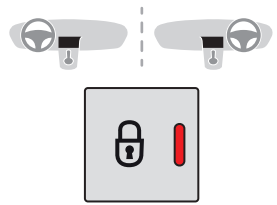
Locking the vehicle
Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.
As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Lost keys, remote control
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.
The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Central locking

Manual



☞ Press this button to operate the central locking of the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the vehicle. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
☞ Pressing the button again unlocks the vehicle completely. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more doors.

The central locking does not work if one of the doors is open.

If the vehicle is deadlocked or locked from the outside, the button is not active. If the vehicle is not deadlocked, use the remote control to unlock the vehicle or pull an interior door handle to open a door.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot can lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To activate or deactivate this function (activated by default):



☞ Press the button until an audible signal is heard and/or a message appears in the screen.

Back-up procedures

Total unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use these procedures in the following cases:
- remote control cell battery flat,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, you can also replace the remote control cell battery.
In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.

☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it, or towards the rear to lock it.

☞ Turn the key towards the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds confirms that the procedure has completed correctly.

If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Use these procedures in the following cases:
- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

In the event of a malfunction with the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to lock the boot and thus ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Central locking not functioning

Driver's door

☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Passenger doors

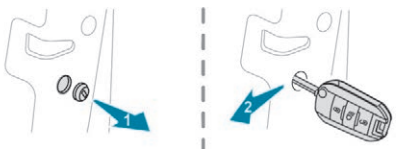
Unlocking

☞ Pull the interior door opening handle.

Locking

☞ Open the door.

☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not activated. Refer to the corresponding section.



☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.

☞ Insert the key into the hole without forcing it; then, without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.

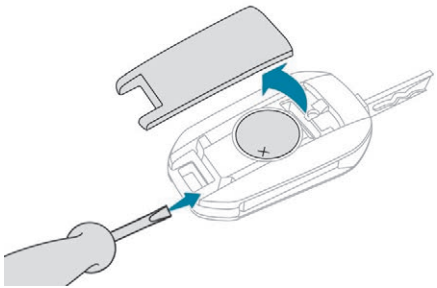
☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.

☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Battery ref.: CR1620/3 volts.



☞ Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and raise the cover.

☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.

☞ Insert the new battery, observing the polarity, and clip the cover onto the housing.

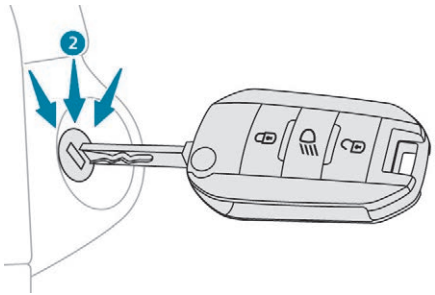
☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Do not throw remote control batteries away as they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

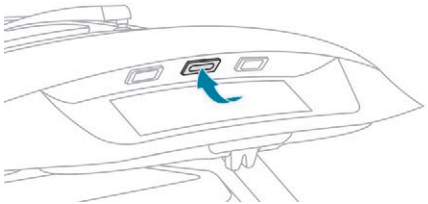


- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- Press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

Boot

Opening



- After unlocking the boot or the vehicle using the remote control or the key, press the opening control, then raise the tailgate.

Closing

- Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.
- If necessary, press down on the tailgate to fully close it.

If the tailgate is not fully closed:

- **with the engine running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds,
- **when driving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, associated with an audible signal and the display of an alert message for a few seconds.

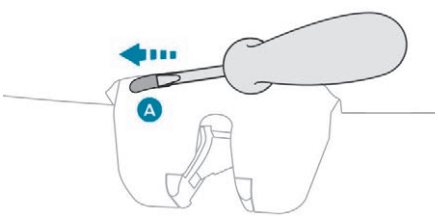
! In the event of a fault or difficulties felt in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it quickly checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to stop this issue getting worse and so as to not cause the tailgate to drop, and serious injuries.

Backup control

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a central locking malfunction.

Unlocking

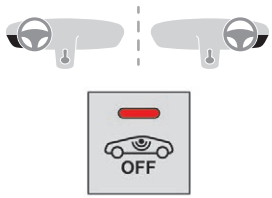
- Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



- Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- Move the latch to the left.

In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- **Exterior perimeter**:
  The system checks whether the vehicle is opened. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet.
- **Interior volumetric**:
  The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Self-protection function: the system checks for the putting out of service of its own components. The alarm is triggered if the battery, button or siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

☞ Turn the ignition off and exit the vehicle.



☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control.

When the monitoring system is active, the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot, bonnet, etc.) is incorrectly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation



☞ Press the remote control unlocking button.



The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered ten times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by ship.

Deactivating the interior volumetric monitoring



☞ Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds, press this button until the indicator lamp is on fixed.

☞ Get out of the vehicle.
☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control.
☞ Reactivate the alarm system normally.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Failure of the remote control

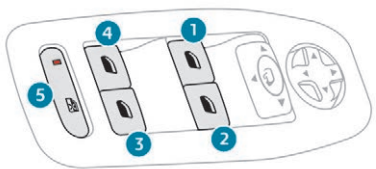
To deactivate the monitoring functions:

☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
☞ Open the door; this sets off the alarm.
☞ Upon switching on the ignition the alarm stops. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Right-hand rear.
4. Left-hand rear.
5. Deactivation of the electric window controls located at the rear seats.

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently, without exceeding the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully, beyond the point of resistance: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.
Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.
To reinitialise normal operation, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes fully. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one more second.
The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivation of the rear controls for the rear electric windows



For your children's safety, press control **5** to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation of the system. It remains on for as long as the deactivation is maintained.
Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

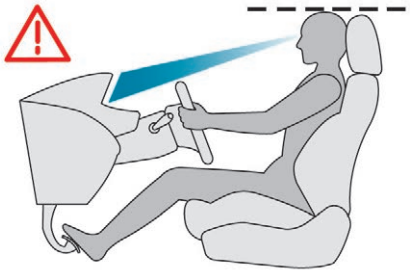
Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.
For each window:

- bring the window down completely, then bring it back up. It will go up by a few centimetres each time. Perform the operation again until the window is fully closed,
- continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

In the event of pinching during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch in question.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

PEUGEOT i-Cockpit

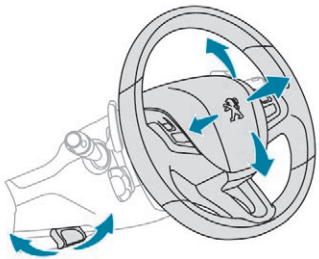


Before taking to the road and in order to take advantage of the specific ergonomics of the PEUGEOT i-Cockpit, adjust it in the following order:

- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the depth and then the height of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.

Once these adjustments have been made, make sure that the "head-up" instrument panel can be viewed correctly over the smaller diameter steering wheel.

Steering wheel adjustment



☞ **With the vehicle stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel.
☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
☞ Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

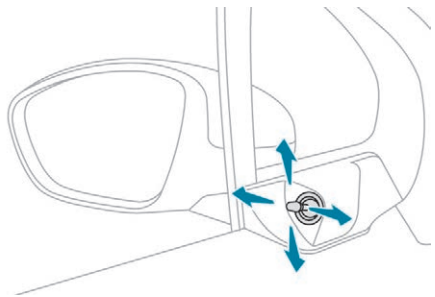
For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be made with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

Manual adjustments



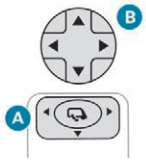
☞ Operate the lever in the four directions to adjust the angle of the mirror glass.

Folding

☞ Fold the mirror manually to protect it when the vehicle is parked.
☞ Unfold it before moving off again.

They do not have automatic defrosting.

Electric adjustments



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

Folding/unfolding

Lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key; the mirrors will fold.
Unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key; the mirrors will unfold.

- ☞ With the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards to fold the mirrors.
- ☞ Pull it again to unfold them.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

! The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Fold the mirrors when putting your vehicle through an automatic car wash.
If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

Rear view mirror

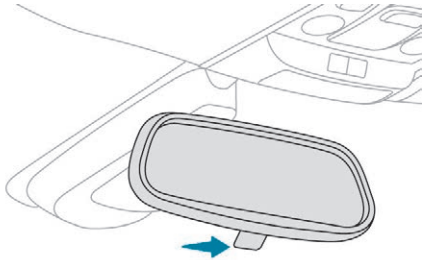
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Adjustment

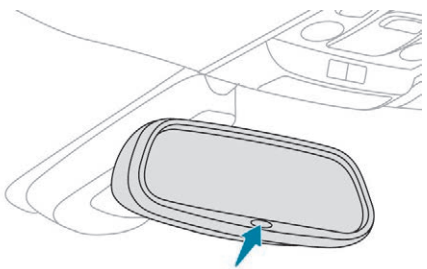
- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the mirror is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position



- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Front seats

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

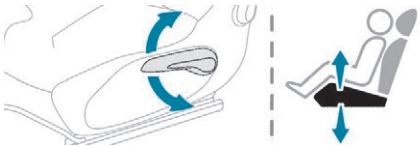
Standard seats

Longitudinal adjustment



Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height adjustment



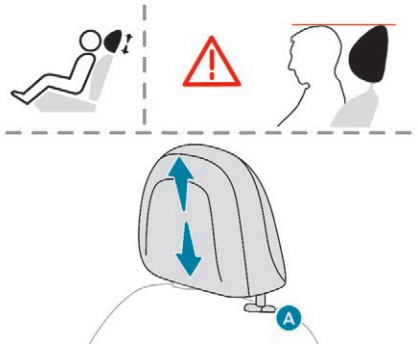
Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

Seat backrest angle



Press the control backwards.

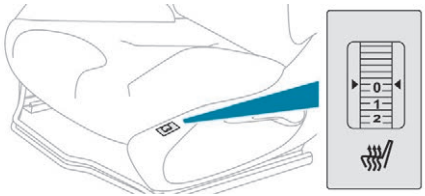
Head restraints



To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
To remove it, press the lug **A** and pull upwards.
To refit the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the openings keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
To lower a head restraint, press the lug **A** and push down on the head restraint at the same time.

The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

Heated seats



☞ With the engine running, use the control wheel to switch on and select the level of heating required:

0: Off.

1: Low.

2: Medium.

3: High.

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

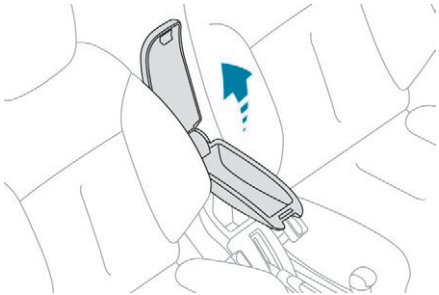
! Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).
There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.
Do not use the system:
- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:
- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

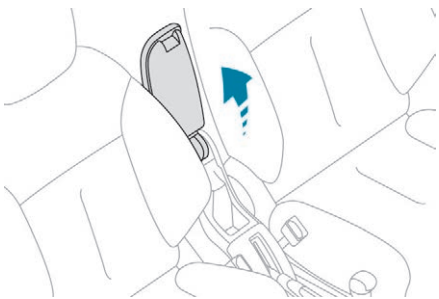
Armrest

Cover with opening lever



☞ Lift the lever to raise the cover.

Storage space in the console



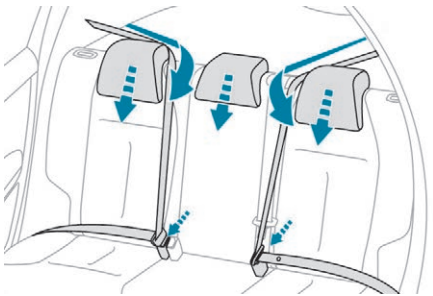
☞ Pull the armrest fully up.

One-piece bench seat

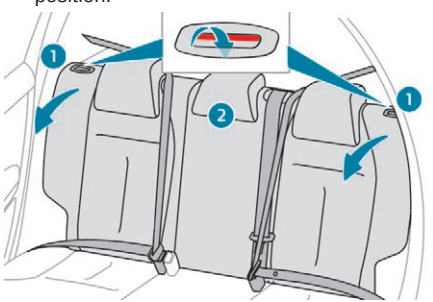
Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and folding one-piece backrest.

Folding the backrest

☞ Move the front seats forward if necessary.

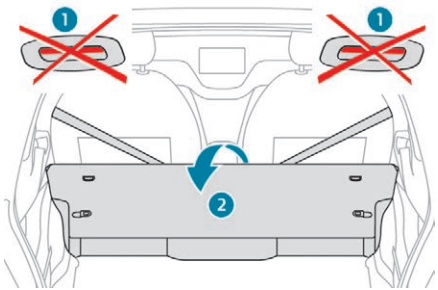


☞ Position the outer seat belts on the backrest and buckle them.
☞ Lower the head restraints to the lowest position.



☞ Release the seat backrest **2** by pressing controls **1** simultaneously.
☞ Fold the seat backrest **2** on to the fixed cushion.

Raising the seat backrest



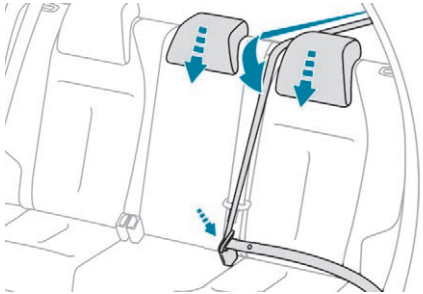
☞ Raise the seat backrest **2**.
☞ Latch the backrest in place, the red indicators on each control **1** are no longer visible.
☞ Unbuckle and return the outer seat belts to their normal positions ready for use.

2/3-1/3 split rear bench seat

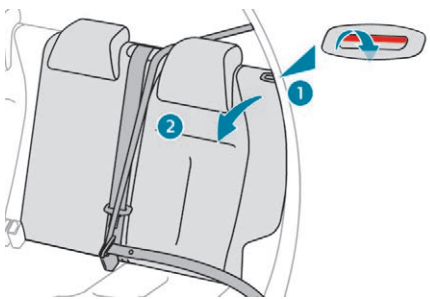
Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrest (left-hand 2/3, right-hand 1/3) which can be folded individually to adapt the load space in the boot.

Folding the backrest

☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.



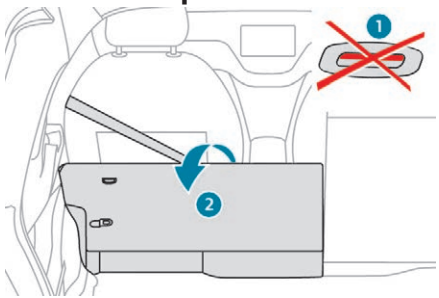
☞ Position the corresponding outer seat belt against the backrest and buckle it.
☞ Fully lower or remove the head restraint.



☞ Release the backrest by pressing control **1** of backrest **2**.
☞ Fold the backrest **2** on to the fixed cushion.

The rear cushion is not removable.

Returning the backrest to the normal position



- ☞ Raise the seat backrest **2**.
- ☞ Latch the backrest in place, the red indicator in the control **1** is no longer visible.
- ☞ Unbuckle and reposition the seat belts ready for use.
- ☞ Refit the head restraint(s).

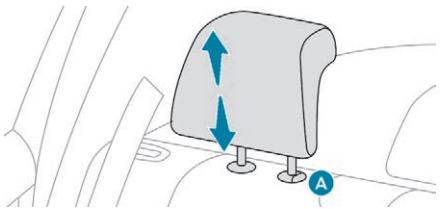
! When folding the seat, the centre seat belt should not be fastened but laid out flat along the seat.

! When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

i The rear seat cushion does not fold, only the seat backrest can be folded in order to increase the boot loading space.

Head restraints

These have a position for use (up) and a stowed position (down).
They can be removed and are interchangeable side to side.



To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ pull the head restraint fully upwards,
- ☞ then, press lug **A**.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

Advice

i **Using the ventilation and air conditioning system**

- ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

☞ Ensure that the cabinfilter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

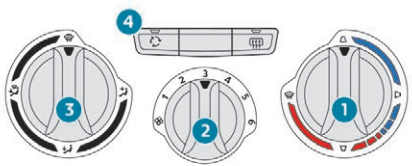
We recommend the use of a combined cabin filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.
Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Heating



1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Recirculation of interior air.

Temperature

☞ Turn the knob **1** from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature.

Air flow

☞ Turn the knob **2** from position "**1**" to position "**6**" to obtain the desired air flow for your comfort.

If you place the air flow control at position "**0** "(off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be maintained. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Air distribution

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the knob **3**.


Windscreen and side windows.

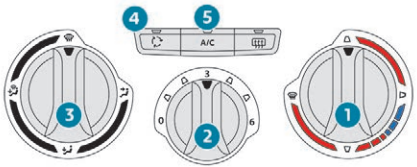

Windscreen, side windows and footwells.


Footwells.


Central and side vents.


The air distribution can be modulated by placing the knob at an intermediate position.

Manual air conditioning



1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

Temperature

☞ Turn the knob **1** from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature.

Air flow

☞ Turn the knob **2** from position "**1**" to position "**6**" to obtain the desired air flow for your comfort.

ℹ If you place the air flow control at position "**0** "(off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be maintained. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Air distribution

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the knob **3**.



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be modulated by placing the knob at an intermediate position.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It allows you:
- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

On/Off

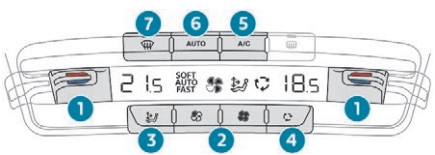
☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

To cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

ℹ The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position "**0**".

! Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



1. Temperature adjustment for left/right side.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.
6. Automatic comfort programme.
7. Automatic visibility programme.

AUTO mode

☞ Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** successively.

The active mode appears in the display screen, as described below:

SOFT AUTO	Provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
AUTO	Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.
AUTO FAST	Provides dynamic and effective air flow.

i When the engine is cold, the air flow will only reach its optimum level gradually to prevent too much cold air being distributed.
In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

Manual mode

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be automatically managed.
When you modify a setting, the indicator lamp in the button **6** goes off.

☞ Press the button **6** again to return to the automatic comfort programme.

Visibility programme

For information on how to use the visibility programme **7**, refer to the corresponding section in "**Front demisting – defrosting**".

Temperature

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature individually.
The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Push the button **1** down (blue) to reduce the value or up (red) to increase it.

A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
It is also recommended to avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

i For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.
☞ Push the button **1** down until "**LO**" is displayed or up until "**HI**" is displayed.

i On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It allows you:
- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

On/Off

☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

To cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position "**0**".

! Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Air distribution

☞ Press button **3** successively to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells,
- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the central and side vents,
- the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
- the footwells.

Air flow

☞ Press button **2** "**Full fan**" to increase the air flow.

The air flow symbol (a fan) appears in the screen. It is filled in progressively in relation to the value required.

☞ Press button **2** "**Empty fan**" to reduce the air flow.

Deactivating the system

☞ Press button **2** "**Empty fan**" for the air flow until the fan symbol disappears and "- - -" appears.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.
Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

! Avoid driving for too long with the system switched off – risk of misting and of deterioration of the air quality.

Pressing button **2** "**Full fan**" reactivates the system with the values in use at the time it was switched off.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and the side windows.
Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

i This allows hot or cold air to be delivered quickly when required.

☞ Press button **4** to recirculate the interior air/ to permit the intake of outside air.

When the interior air recirculation is active, the symbol appears or the indicator lamp comes on (depending on version).

! Avoid prolonged use of the recirculation of interior air – Risk of formation of mist and deterioration of the air quality!

Front demisting – defrosting

With heating



☞ Put the controls for air flow **2**, temperature **1** and air distribution **3** in the appropriately marked position.

With manual air conditioning



☞ Put the controls for air flow **2**, temperature **1** and air distribution **3** in the appropriately marked position.

☞ For air conditioning, press button **5**; its indicator lamp comes on.

With automatic dual-zone air conditioning

Auto – Visibility programme

Switching on

☞ Press button **7** to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

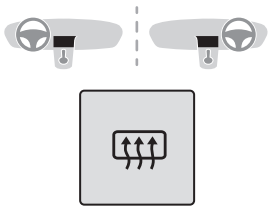
Switching off

☞ Press button **7** or button **6** again; the indicator lamp in button **7** goes off, and the indicator lamp in button **6** comes on.

The system starts again with the values in use at the time it was switched off.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting/defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Rear screen demisting – defrosting



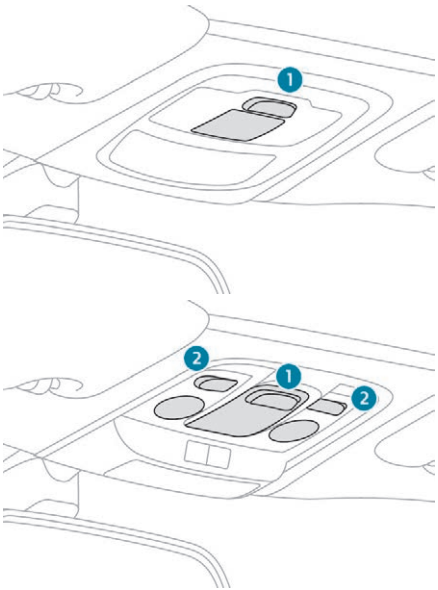
On/Off

☞ Press this button to switch on/switch off the defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors (if fitted to your vehicle).

Switch off the defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

i The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

Courtesy lamp



1. **Courtesy lamp**
2. **Map reading lamps**

In this position, the lighting comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when opening a door,
- when unlocking remotely.

It switches off gradually:
- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

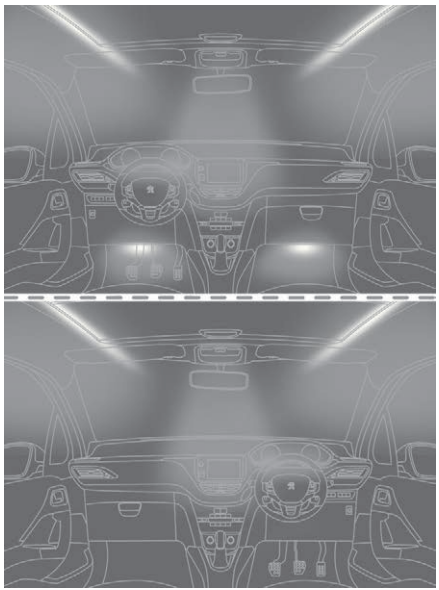
In "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately 30 seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamp.

Interior ambient lighting



Switching on

At night, panoramic sunroof light-emitting diodes (LEDs) come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Switching off

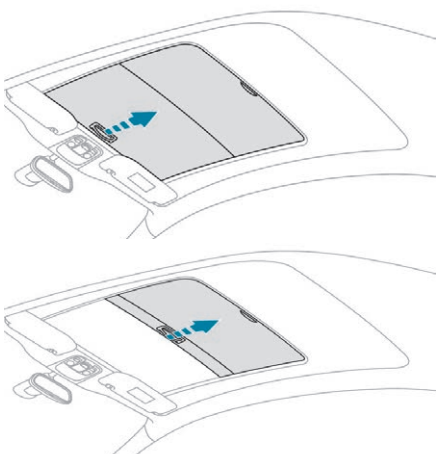
The interior ambient lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

MENU

The interior ambient lighting can be configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

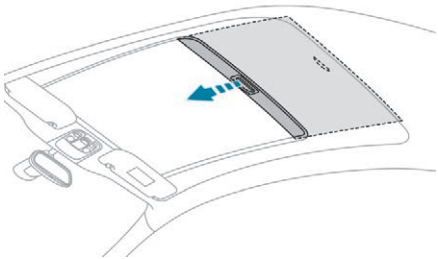
Sunroof blind

Opening



☞ Take the blind by its handle and push it rearward to the desired position.

Closing

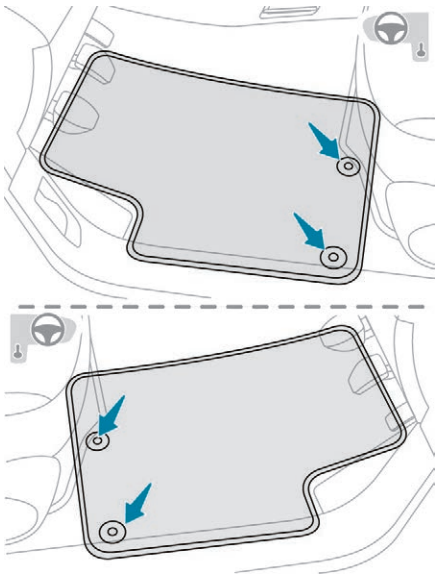


☞ Take the blind by its handle and pull it forward to the desired position.

Interior fittings

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet provided.
The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removing

To remove the mat on the driver's side:
☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
☞ unclip the fixings,
☞ remove the mat.

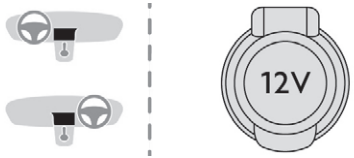
Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:
☞ position the mat correctly,
☞ reattach the fixings by pressing,
☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

12 V accessory socket

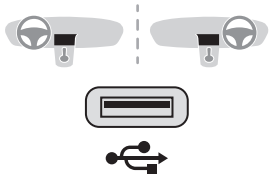


☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 watts), lift the cover and plug in the correct adapter.

! Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (risk of damage to your accessory).

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB socket



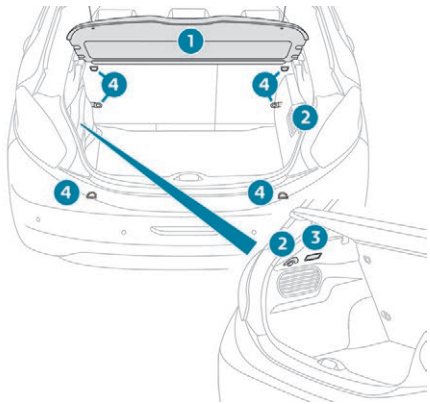
The USB socket allows the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod®-type digital audio player, or a USB memory stick.
The USB reader reads your audio files, which are then transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.
These files are managed via the steering wheel controls or from the audio system.

i When connected to the USB socket, the portable device can be charged automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the amperage supplied by the vehicle.

For more detail on the Audio equipment and telematics, and particularly the USB socket, refer to the corresponding part of the audio equipment section.

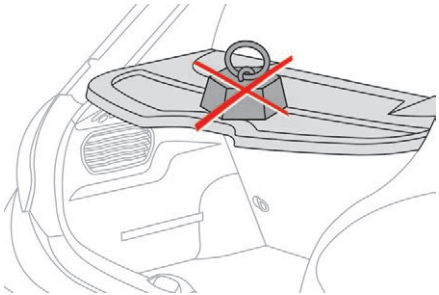
The USB socket also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, so that certain applications on the smartphone can be used on the touch screen.

Boot fittings



1. **Rear shelf**
2. **Hooks**
3. **Boot lamp**
4. **Stowing rings (depending on version)**

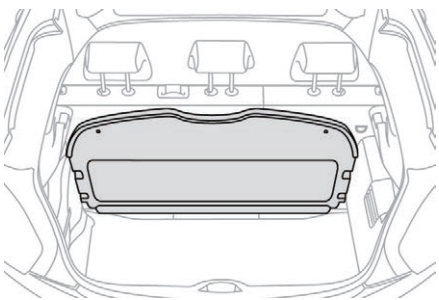
Rear shelf



To remove the shelf:

- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ gently lift the shelf, then remove it.

Stow it:



- vertically behind the rear seats,
- vertically behind the front seats.

To refit the shelf:

- ☞ engage it on the supports on each side and slide it until it reaches the notches,
- ☞ raise it to refit the two cords.

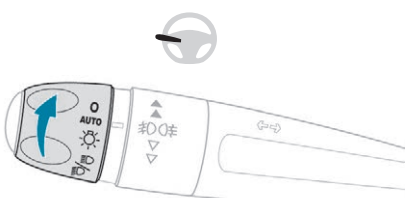
! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the shelf can turn into projectiles.

Lighting control stalk

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Travelling abroad
If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Selection of main lighting mode



Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

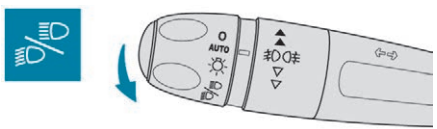
O Lighting off (ignition off)/Front daytime running lamps (engine running).

Sidelamps only.

Dipped or main beam headlamps.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Headlamp dipping



Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

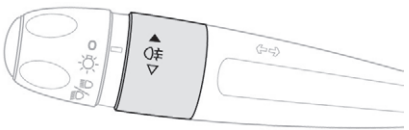
Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Foglamps

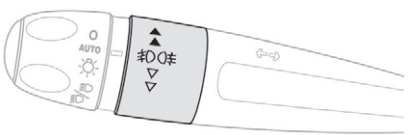
The foglamps operate with dipped or main beam headlamps on.

Rear foglamp only



☞ To switch it on, turn the ring forwards.
When the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.
☞ To switch it off, turn the ring rearwards.

Front foglamps and rear foglamp



Rotate and release the ring:
☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,
☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamp,
☞ once rearwards to switch off the rear foglamp,
☞ rearwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting) or the dipped beams are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

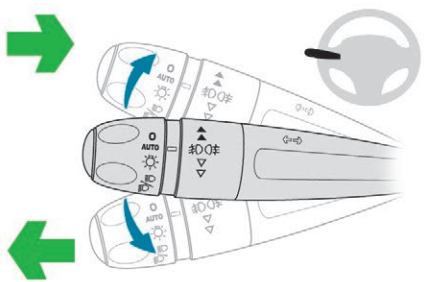
☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

! In good or rainy weather, by day and night, using the front and rear foglamps is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Do not forget to turn off the front and rear foglamps as soon as they are no longer necessary.

i **Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off**
On switching off the ignition, all of the lighting turns off immediately, except for dipped beam if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

i **Switching on the lighting after the ignition is switched off**
To reactivate the lighting control stalk, set the ring to position "**0**" - lighting off, then to the desired position.
On opening the driver's door, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.
The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a maximum duration of 30 minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

Direction indicators



☞ Lower the lighting control stalk fully when turning left.

☞ Raise the lighting control stalk fully when turning right.

i If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h).

Three flashes

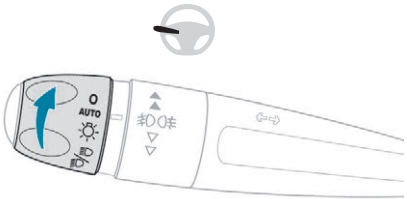
Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash three times.

i This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful for changing lane on fast roads.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by the sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Switching on



☞ Turn the ring to the "**AUTO**" position. Activation of the function is accompanied by a message on the screen.

Switching off

☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by a message in the screen.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically. Do not cover the sunshine sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Automatic guide-me-home lighting

When associated with automatic illumination of headlamps, the guide-me-home lighting offers the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration of 15, 30 or 60 seconds,
- automatic activation of guide-me-home lighting when the automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

MENU

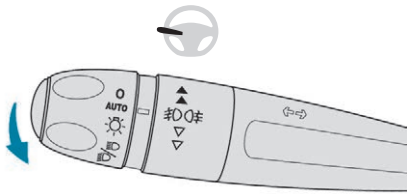
The guide-me-home lighting can be configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the screen, accompanied by an audible signal. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

Switching on



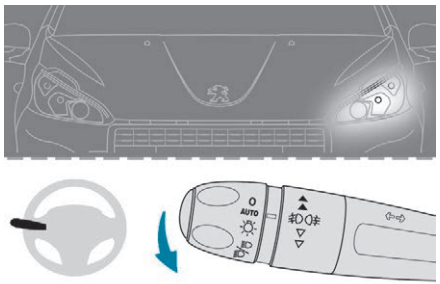
☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk.
☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Manual guide-me-home lighting is also available from the remote control lighting button.

Switching off

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Parking lamps



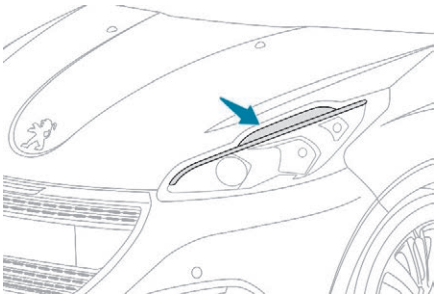
Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down, depending on the traffic side (for example, when parked on the left, move the lighting control stalk upwards; the right-hand sidelamps come on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the middle position or switch on the ignition.

Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps



The front and rear lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

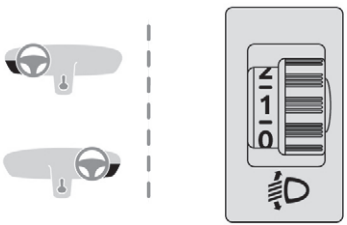
They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "**0**" or "**AUTO**" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at "**AUTO**" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

ℹ The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

Headlamp beam height adjustment

To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.



0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.

-. Intermediate setting.

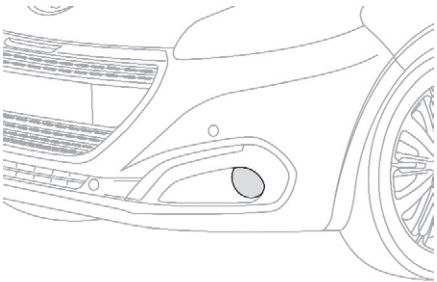
1. 5 people.

-. 5 people + maximum authorised load.

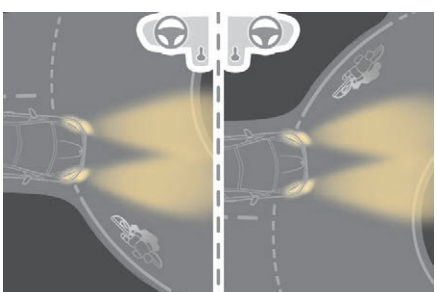
2. Driver + maximum authorised load.

ℹ The initial setting is position "**0**".

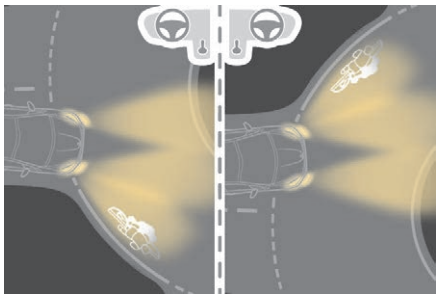
Cornering lighting



With dipped or main beam headlamps, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approximately 40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



Without cornering lighting



With cornering lighting

Activation

This function operates:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Deactivation

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming

MENU

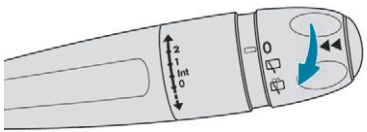
It is possible to activate or deactivate the cornering lighting from the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.
This system is activated by default.

Wiper control stalk

In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Front wipers



2 Fast (heavy rain).

1 Normal (moderate rain).

Int Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

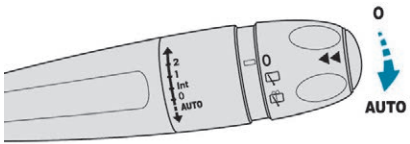
0 Off.

Single wipe (press down and release).

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

AUTO The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.

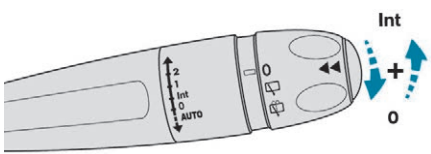
Switching on



Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

AUTO This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off



Give another short downwards push to the control stalk or shift the control stalk to a different position (Int, 1 or 2).

AUTO This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than 1 minute.

If the wipers operate in intermittent mode when in AUTO mode, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

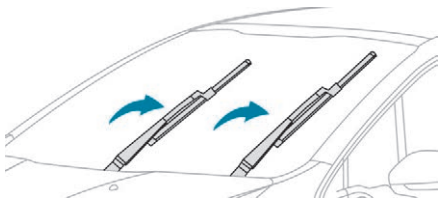
Do not cover the rain sensor, combined with the sunshine sensor, located at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror. When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Front screenwash

Pull the wiper control stalk towards you. The screenwash and then the wipers operate for a preset time.

Changing a wiper blade

This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.
It is used for cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.



To move the wiper blades to the vertical position:

☞ Operate the wiper control stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

To return them to the park position:

☞ Switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Removing a wiper blade

☞ Lift the corresponding wiper arm.
☞ Unclip and remove the wiper blade.

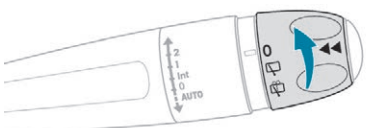
Fitting a new wiper blade

☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Rear wiper



Off.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle configuration menu on the touch screen.

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wiper is operating.

MENU

The activation or deactivation of operation of the rear wiper when engaging reverse gear can be set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

General safety recommendations

! Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

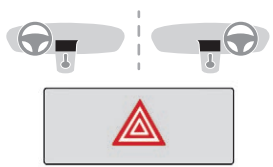
! **We draw your attention to the following points:**

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by PEUGEOT may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshop, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specifications of compatible transmitters (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Hazard warning lamps



☞ When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

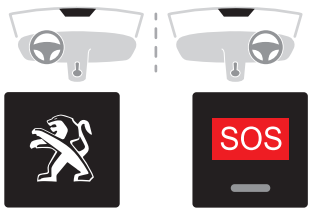
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the next time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Emergency or assistance call



Peugeot Connect SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Peugeot Connect SOS" service*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request; the LED goes off.

The LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"Peugeot Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language**, and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched**.

In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

* In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.
If the indicator lamp lights up continuously red: there is a system fault.
If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system's fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Peugeot Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Immediately pressing this button again cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and of PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by pressing "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons and, in particular, to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) comprising the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contributes towards improved control on corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.
The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.
The EBFD system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

The fixed illumination of this warning lamp indicates that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.

If these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system.

STOP

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
In both cases, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

If you need to brake in an emergency, press the brake pedal very firmly and keep the pressure applied.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Operation

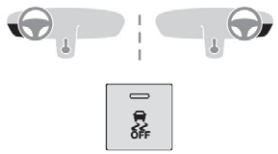
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.
They come into operation in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate these systems, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.
Reactivate these systems as soon as the level of grip permits.

Deactivation of ASR and DSC using the button



☞ Press this button.
The orange indicator lamp in the button comes on.
The ASR and DSC systems will no longer have an effect on engine operation or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

Deactivation of ASR using the touch screen

MENU The deactivation is configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

It is confirmed by the display of a message.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or above 31 mph (50 km/h).
Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate them manually.

Reactivation of ASR and DSC using the button

☞ Press the button again to reactivate manually.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Reactivation of ASR using the touch screen

MENU The reactivation is configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



It is confirmed by the display of a message.

Malfunction



Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

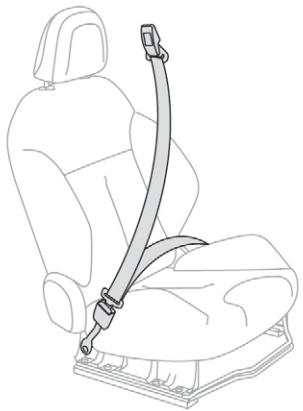
The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding both the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components and the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.

In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

Seat belts

At the front

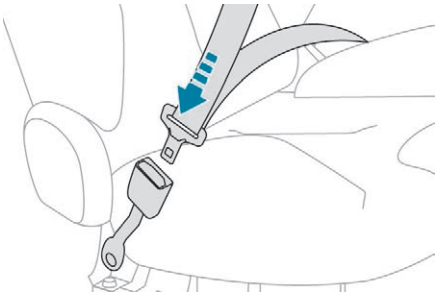


The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the passenger's chest, thus improving their protection.

Fastening

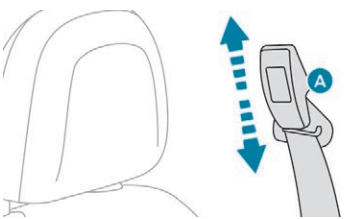


- Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Height adjustment



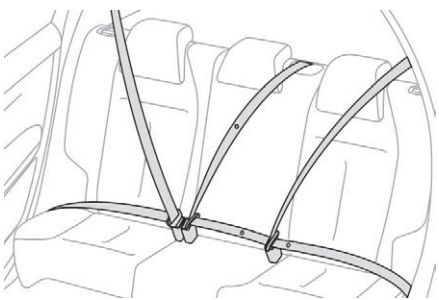
- To lower the attachment point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it downwards.
- To raise the attachment point, slide the control **A** upwards.

Warning lamp

Not fastened/unfastened.
When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

It remains on for a certain time if the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt. Once this period has elapsed, the warning lamp goes off if the driver's seat belt is fastened.
From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for 2 minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume if the driver and/or the front passenger have not fastened their seat belt. Once these 2 minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

At the rear



The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt equipped, for the outer seats, with a force limiter.

Fastening

- Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

Warning lamp

Unfastened.
From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) and for 2 minutes, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume, when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Installation
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

Recommendations for children
Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

Maintenance
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

In the event of an impact
Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioner may be deployed before and independently of the airbags.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked and, if necessary, replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

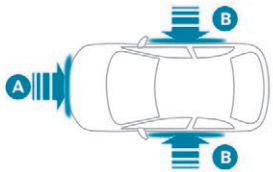
General information

System designed to contribute towards improving passenger safety (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

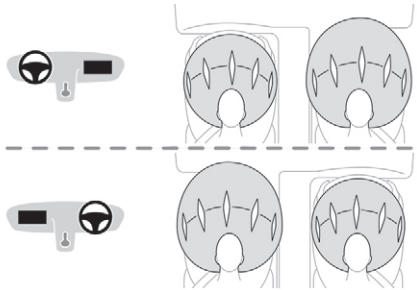


A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

i The deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

* For more information on **Deactivating the front passenger airbag**, refer to the corresponding section.

Front airbags

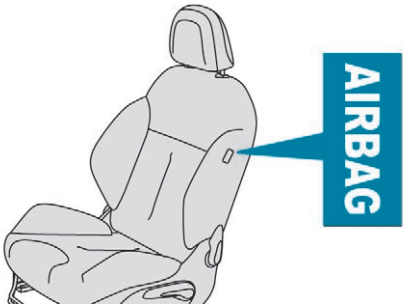


This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe frontal impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and chest.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Lateral airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

It is deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp in the instrument panel comes on, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags might no longer deploy in a crash.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not deployed.

Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.
Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.
Fasten your seat belt, ensuring it is positioned correctly.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag systems must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out.
The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Curtain airbags
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the product range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
Such work must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

General points relating to child seats

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- "**rearward facing**" up to the age of 3,
- "**forward facing**" over the age of 3.

Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.
At the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.
At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

Child seat at the front

"Rearward facing"





When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the rearmost longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.

The front passenger airbag must be deactivated, without exception. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.

"Forward facing"





When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the rearmost longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened and leave the front passenger airbag activated.

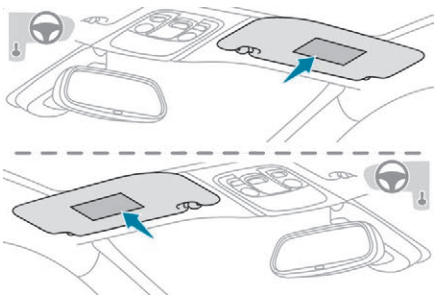


When a child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the **highest position**, in the **rearmost longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

Never install a "rearward facing" child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.



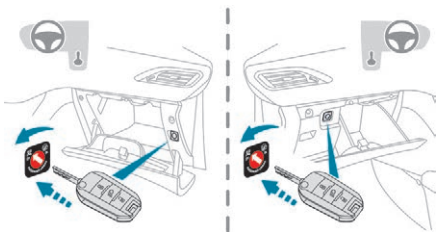


The warning label present on both sides of the passenger sun visor repeats this advice.
In line with current legislation, you will find this warning in all the required languages in the following tables.

Passenger airbag OFF



Deactivating the front passenger airbag



- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the **OFF** position.
- ☞ Remove the key while keeping the switch in this position.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To ensure the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivating the front passenger airbag

When you remove the "rearward facing" child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **ON** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, for approximately one minute, to signal that the front airbag is activated.

AR	لا يجب أبدًا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seat at the rear

"Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

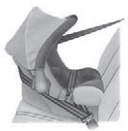
Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1
"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"
Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5
"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"
Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

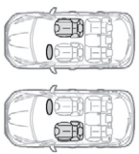
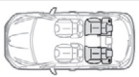
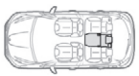
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L6
"GRACO Booster"
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (**a**) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat position in the vehicle.

Seat position			Weight of the child/indicative age			
			Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9-18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15-25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22-36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
	Front passenger seat (**c**), (**e**)	With height adjustment	**U(R)**	**U(R)**	**U(R)**	**U(R)**
		Without height adjustment	**U***	**U***	**U***	**U***
	Outer rear seats (**d**)		**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
	Centre rear seat (**d**)		**U** (**f**)	**U** (**f**)	**U**	**U**

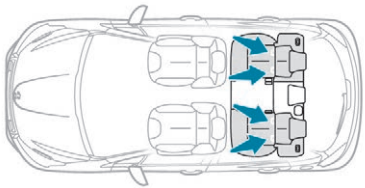
U: seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".
U(R): same as **U**, with the vehicle seat adjusted to the highest and rearmost longitudinal position.
U*: same as **U**, with the backrest straightened.

(**a**) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in any vehicle using the seat belt.
(**b**) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
(**c**) Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
(**d**) When installing a child seat on a rear seat in a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" position, move the front seat forward then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

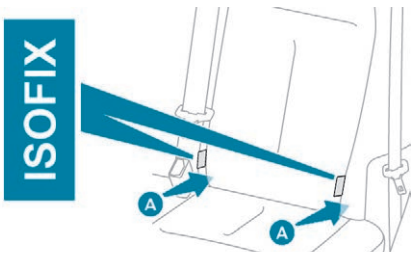
(**e**) When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must absolutely be deactivated. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.
When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must remain activated.
(**f**) A child seat with support leg must never be installed on this passenger seat.

"ISOFIX" mountings

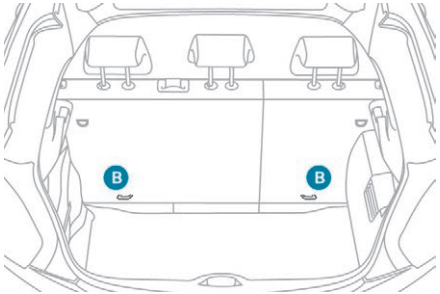
The seats, shown below, are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



The mountings comprise three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, located behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **TOP TETHER**, for fixing the upper strap.

This system prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a front impact.
This ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.
ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**.
Some seats also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ☞ remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- ☞ pass the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- ☞ secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
- ☞ tighten the upper strap.

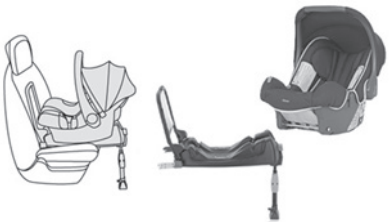
i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

i For information about the installation possibilities for ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guides from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"**RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base**" (size category: **E**)	"**FAIR G 0/1 S** and its **RWF B ISOFIX**" base (size category: **C**)	"**Baby P2C Midi and its ISOFIX base**" (size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	**Group 0+ and 1: from birth to 18 kg**	**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**
		
Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a height adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the child seat body is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.	Installed "rearward facing". Is installed using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. 6 seat body angles. Use the **type B** "**rearward facing**" **(RWF)** ISOFIX base. This child seat can also be used in a "forward facing" position on seating positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, the child seat body must be attached to the seat of the vehicle by the three point seat belt.	Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a height adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be used "forward facing". This child seat **cannot** be secured with a seat belt. We recommend that you use the seat in the "rearward facing" position up to the age of 3 years.

"**RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX**" (size category: **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18kg

Is installed only in the "forward facing" position. Attaches to rings **A** and upper ring **B**, referred to as the Top Tether, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

Summary table of locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category of the child seat, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child/indicative age									
	Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9-18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Carrycot**		**Rearward facing**			**Rearward facing**		**Forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat 	Not ISOFIX									
Outer rear seats 	**X**		**IL-SU***	**IL-SU**		**IL-SU***	**IL-SU**	**IUF IL-SU**		
Centre rear seat 	Not ISOFIX									

* Vehicle seat in a specific position: move the seats in front of the child seat forward.

IUF: seat position suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: seat position suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" section.
X: seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight class indicated.

Advice

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Children at the rear
At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:
- a "rearward facing" child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forward facing".

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, straighten its backrest.
For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

Children at the front
The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child if the airbag is deployed.

Installing a booster seat
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
We recommend using a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

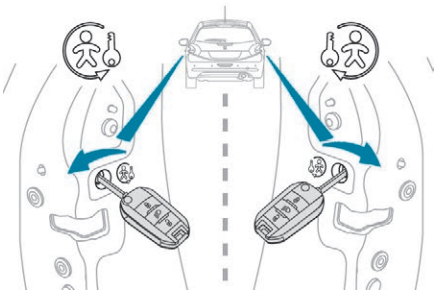
Additional protections
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety precaution, do not leave:
- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child lock

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door.

Locking



☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

Electric child lock

Electric system for locking the rear doors so that they cannot be opened using their interior controls.

Activation



☞ With the ignition on, press this button.
The red indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming the activation.
This red indicator lamp remains on for as long as the child lock is activated.
Opening the doors from the outside and operation of the electric rear windows from the driver's controls remain possible.

Deactivation

☞ With the ignition on, press this button again.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm deactivation.
This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

! Any other state of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Driving advice

Observe driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary.
On a long journey, taking a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

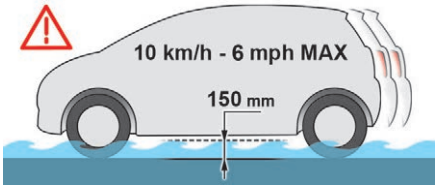
Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.) – Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:
- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.
As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.
In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

New vehicle
Do not tow a trailer before having driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.
To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

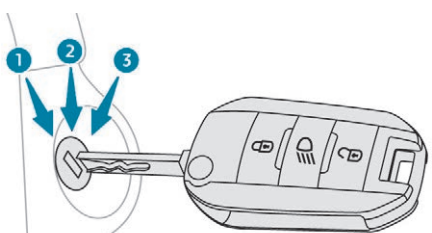
☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on **Headlamp beam height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing device is used.

Starting – Switching off the engine

Ignition switch



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Start** position.

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Starting

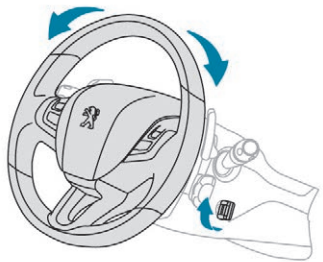


With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear selector in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.



With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector at **P** or **N** then fully depress the brake pedal.

☞ Insert the key into the ignition switch.
The system recognises the starting code.



☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

i In some cases, you may have to apply some force to turn the steering wheel (if the wheels are on full lock against a kerb, for example).

☞ Turn the key all the way towards the dashboard to position **3 (Starting)**.
☞ When the engine starts, release the key.

i With **Petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

Electronic immobiliser

The original key contains a coded electronic chip. When the ignition is switched on, starting is only possible if the code is detected and recognised.
This anti-theft protection locks the engine management system a few moments after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine following a break-in.

In the event of a fault, you are informed by the illumination of this warning lamp, the emission of an audible signal and the display of a message.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Switching off

☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
☞ Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

! **Free-wheeling**
For safety reasons, do not free-wheel. Otherwise, some vehicle functions will no longer be active.

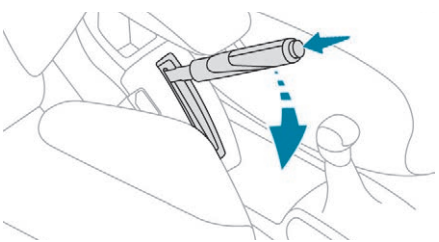
i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, the front wheels should be straight before switching off the engine.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

i **Key left in**
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Parking brake

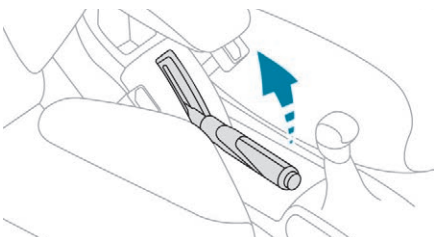
Releasing



☞ Pull the parking brake lever up slightly, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released. Remember to fully lower the parking brake lever.

Applying



☞ Pull the lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

! When parking on a steep slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear opposite to the direction the vehicle is facing and switch off the ignition.
On return to the vehicle, remember that a gear had been engaged before starting the engine.

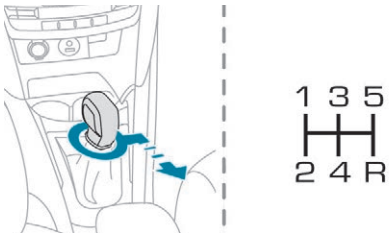
! If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.
Checks of this safety-related system must be carried by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual gearbox

5-speed

☞ Move the gear lever fully to the right to engage 5th gear.

Engaging reverse gear



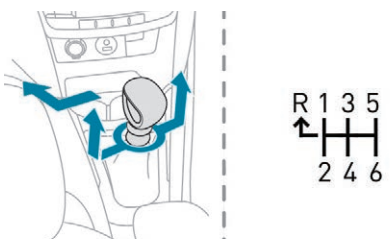
☞ Move the gear lever to the right then pull it back.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

6-speed

☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the collar below the gear lever knob, then push the lever fully to the left and then forward.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to aid engine start-up:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

i The gear shift indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

Automatic gearbox (EAT6)



P. Parking.
R. Reverse.
N. Neutral.
D. Drive – AUTO driving mode.
M. Manual mode.
S. Sport – More dynamic driving.
❄ Snow – Driving on snowy roads (depending on engine).

Display in the instrument panel

P R N D

When you select a position with the lever, the corresponding lamp is displayed in the instrument panel.

Foot on the brake warning

Press the brake pedal when this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

Automatic mode

This mode allows gear changing without action by the driver.

Starting

Parking brake applied.
☞ Start the engine.
☞ Lever in position **P** or **N**.
☞ Fully depress the brake pedal.
☞ Release the parking brake.
☞ Place the selector at **D** or **R**.
☞ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal progressively.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

! Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running.

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
When braking, the gearbox shifts down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Manual mode

This mode allows manual sequential gear changing.

☞ Move the gear lever to **M**.

+ ☞ Push the lever forward to change up.

- ☞ Pull the lever back to change down.

Invalid value

▬ This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

i You can change from position **D** to **M** and from **M** to **D** at any time.

! When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

i If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.
If the temperature is below -23°C, the engine should be left at idle for 4 minutes, to ensure the correct operation and service life of the engine and gearbox.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button "**S**" after starting the engine.
The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme ❄

(Depending on engine.)
☞ Press the "❄" button, after starting the engine.
The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.
This programme improves starting and traction when grip is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

i At any time, press the selected button again to quit the activated programme and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press button **S** or ❄ again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Stopping – Parking

Before switching off the engine.
☞ Engage position **P** or **N**.
☞ Apply the parking brake.
☞ Immobilise the vehicle.

If the lever is not in position **P**, an alert message appears on the screen on opening the driver's door or approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

☞ Reposition the lever at position **P**; the message disappears.

When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the screen, indicates a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox goes into back-up mode by staying in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial jolt when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

☞ if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,

☞ with a flat battery, if you force the movement of the lever from position **P** to another position.

To reduce fuel consumption during prolonged stops with the engine running (e.g. traffic jam), position the gear lever at **N** and apply the parking brake.

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine.)

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this indication without engaging the intermediate gears.
Gear shift recommendations must not be considered as compulsory. In fact, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear.

The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

The information appears in the instrument panel, in the form of an ascending or descending arrow and the recommended gear.

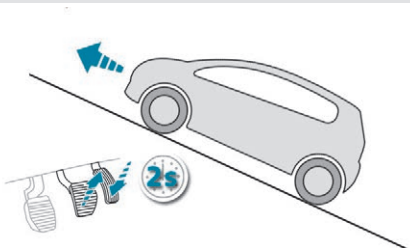
The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).
The system never suggests:
- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended. The system always recommends to change up if necessary. Depending on the engine, it may also recommend to change down if necessary.

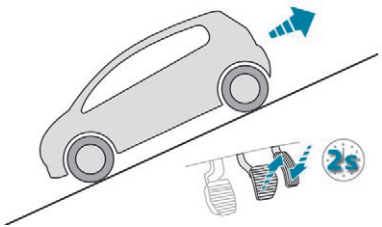
Hill start assist

System that holds your vehicle for around 2 seconds, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

! The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its function.



Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.
With an automatic gearbox, if you are in position **D**.



Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Hill start assist is only available when:
- your foot on the brake pedal fully immobilises the vehicle,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp is on fixed in the instrument panel.

Malfunction

If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Stop & Start

The system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you wish to move off again. Restarting occurs instantaneously, quickly and silently. Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

STOP mode

ECO This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby.

With BlueHDi Diesel and manual gearbox:
- As soon as the vehicle stops or the speed is less than 2 mph (3 km/h) (with 1.5 BlueHDi engine).
- With gear lever in neutral and clutch pedal released.

With PureTech petrol and manual or automatic gearbox:
- As soon as the vehicle stops or the speed is less than 2 mph (3 km/h) (with manual gearbox and depending on version).
- With gear lever in neutral and clutch pedal released (manual gearbox).
- With brake pedal pressed or gear lever in position **N** (automatic gearbox).

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not triggered when:
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some temporary conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) make this necessary to ensure control of a system.



This indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.



A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on using the key.

For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
The Stop & Start system does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, such as braking.

With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a message is displayed asking you to depress the clutch pedal again to restart the engine.

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key.

START mode



This indicator lamp goes off and the engine restarts.

With manual gearbox:
- With clutch pedal depressed.

With automatic gearbox:
- With gear lever in position **D** or **M**.
- With brake pedal released.

or

- With gear lever in position **N.**
- With brake pedal released.
- Then gear lever in position **D** or **M**.

or

- With reverse gear engaged.

Special cases: START mode triggered automatically

As a safety measure and for your convenience, START mode is triggered automatically when:
- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- some temporary conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.) make this necessary to ensure control of a system or the vehicle.



This indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation/Reactivation

In certain circumstances, such as the need to maintain the temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start system.
The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on.
If the engine is in STOP mode, it then restarts.
The Stop & Start system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on.



☞ To deactivate or reactivate the system, press this button.

The indicator lamp is lit when the system is deactivated.

Opening the bonnet

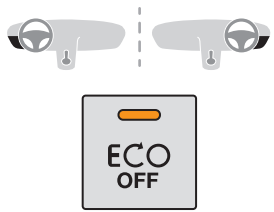


Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

Driving on flooded roads

Before driving through a flooded road, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the system, the ECO OFF switch warning lamp flashes, then comes on fixed.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch the ignition off and to restart the engine using the key.

The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.
All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Under-inflation detection

This system automatically monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

The system monitors the pressure in all four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised after every tyre pressure adjustment or wheel change**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the pressure of one or more tyres.

The tyre under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system still requires you to check the tyre inflation pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs handling, extends braking distances and causes early tyre wear, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

The tyre pressure specifications for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds). Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Under-inflation alert



This warning is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and, depending on the equipment installed, a message displayed on the screen.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment),

or

- ☞ if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold,

or

- ☞ if it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

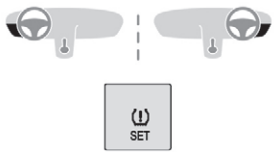
The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.
The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.
The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Without touch screen



☞ With the ignition on and the vehicle stationary, press this button for about 3 seconds then release it, an audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

With touch screen

The reinitialisation of the system is done with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.

MENU

The reinitialisation of the system is configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

! The new pressure parameters saved are treated as reference values by the system.

i **Snow chains**
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Malfunction



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp, accompanied by the illumination of the Service warning lamp, indicates a fault with the system.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

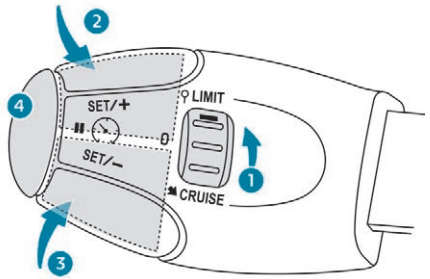
i After any intervention on the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

Speed limiter "LIMIT"

The system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting programmed by the driver.

Steering mounted controls

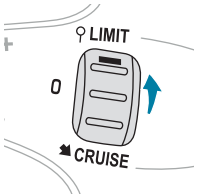




1. Speed limiter mode selection/off.
2. Increases the set value.
3. Decreases the set value.
4. Speed limiter on/pause.

The speed setting is selected with the engine running, stationary or when driving. The minimum speed setting possible is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The vehicle responds to the accelerator until resistance is felt in the pedal, which signifies that the vehicle has reached the limiter speed setting.
However, pressing the pedal beyond this point of resistance to the floor permits exceeding of the programmed speed. To resume use of the limiter, simply reduce the pressure on the accelerator pedal gradually and return to a speed below that programmed.
Setting and operation of the system can be done stationary with the engine running or when driving.

Selection





☞ Place the thumbwheel at the "**LIMIT**" position: speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (PAUSE).

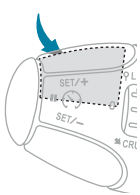
You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

Registering a limit speed



This can be done without switching the limiter on, but the engine must be running.

To register a speed **higher** than the previous setting:

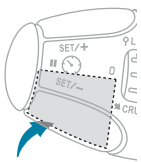


☞ Press the **SET +** button.

A short press increases the speed setting by 1 mph (km/h).

Pressing and holding increases the setting in steps of 5 mph (km/h).

To register a speed **lower** than the previous setting:

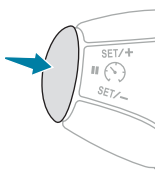


☞ Press the **SET –** button.

A short press decreases the setting by 1 mph (km/h).

Pressing and holding decreases the setting in steps of 5 mph (km/h).

On/Pause





A first press on this button switches the speed limiter on, a second press pauses it.

Exceeding the programmed limit speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect, unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed setting flashes, accompanied by an audible signal.

To return to normal operation of the speed limiter, reduce your speed to below the programmed speed setting.

Flashing of the speed setting



It flashes:

- after forcing the accelerator pedal past the point of resistance,
- when the limiter cannot prevent the speed of the vehicle increasing, because of the profile of the road or when going down a steep hill,
- under sharp acceleration.

Switching the system off

☞ Place the thumbwheel at the **0** position or switch off the ignition to stop the system.

The last speed registered stays in memory.

Malfunction



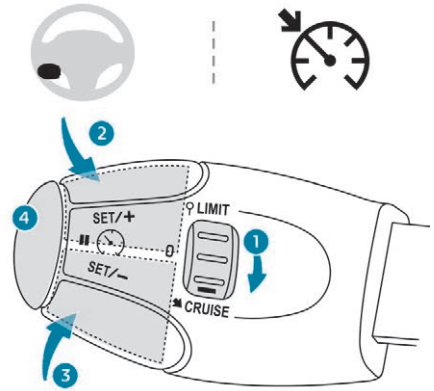
The registered speed is erased, then replaced by three dashes.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Under no circumstances can the speed limiter replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
Always pay attention to the profile of the road, be careful when accelerating sharply and stay in complete control of your vehicle.
To avoid any jamming under the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured to the floor correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control "CRUISE"

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

Steering mounted controls

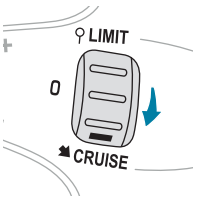


1. Cruise control mode selection/off.
2. Increase the programmed value.
3. Decrease the programmed value.
4. Stop/resume cruise control.

This driving assistance system, for use when the traffic is flowing, allows a speed programmed by the driver to be maintained, except on a steep gradient.

With a manual gearbox
In order for it to be programmed or activated, the speed of the vehicle must be above 25 mph (40 km/h) with 4th gear or higher engaged.
With an automatic gearbox
In order for it to be programmed or activated, the speed of the vehicle must be above 25 mph (40 km/h) with 2nd gear or higher engaged in manual mode, or position **D** selected.

Selection



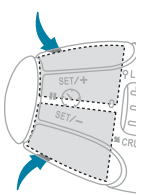


☞ Place the thumbwheel at the "**CRUISE**" position: cruise control mode is selected, but is not switched on (PAUSE).

Registering a cruise speed setting



- Bring the vehicle up to the desired speed by pressing the accelerator.



- Press the **SET –** or **SET +** button.

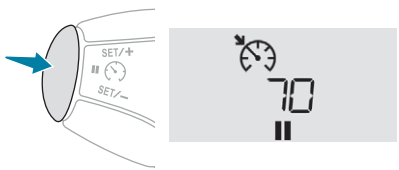
The speed setting is registered/activated and the vehicle will maintain this speed.

Temporarily exceeding the speed

It is possible to **accelerate** and temporarily drive at a speed higher than the programmed speed setting.
The programmed value flashes.

When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the programmed speed setting.

Pause (OFF)



- Press this button or the brake or clutch pedal (depending on version).

! With 1.2 PureTech 82 and 110 (Euro 6.2) or 1.5 BlueHDi (Euro 6.2) engines with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start, pressing the clutch pedal does not pause the cruise control: the cruise control remains active after changing gears.

Resume



☞ After the cruise control has been paused, press this button.

The vehicle returns to the last registered speed.
Alternatively, you can also resume the procedure for "Registering a cruise speed setting".

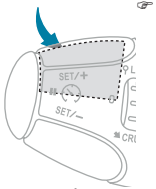
Changing the registered speed setting



To register a speed **higher** than the previous setting, there are two possibilities.

Without using the accelerator

☞ Press the **SET +** button.

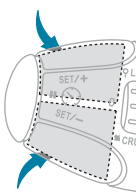


A short press increases the speed setting by 1 mph (km/h).
Pressing and holding increases the setting in steps of 5 mph (km/h).

Using the accelerator

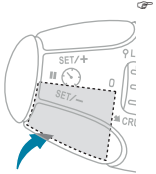
☞ Exceed the registered speed until you reach the desired speed.

☞ Press the **SET +** or **SET –** button.



To register a speed **lower** than the previous setting:

☞ Press the **SET –** button.



A short press decreases the setting by 1 mph (km/h).
Pressing and holding decreases the setting in steps of 5 mph (km/h).

Switching the function off

☞ Place the thumbwheel at the "**0**" position: cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the total mileage recorder.

After switching off the ignition, all registered speed settings are lost.

Malfunction



The registered speed is erased, then replaced by three dashes.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! When changing the registered speed setting by means of a maintained press, pay attention as the speed may increase or decrease rapidly.
Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.
On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the registered speed.
The cruise control system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured to the floor correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Memorising speeds

This function allows speed settings to be stored that will then be offered for configuration of two systems: speed limiter (limit speed) or cruise control (cruise speed).
You can memorise up to five speed settings in the system for each of the two systems.
By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

With touch screen

MENU

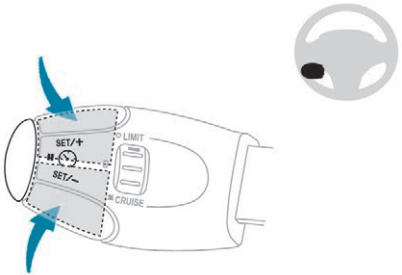


This memorisation can be configured from the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

☞ Select the "**Driving functions**" tab.
☞ Select the "**Adjusting speeds**" function.
☞ Press "**ON**" to activate the function.
☞ Tick the speed settings **1** to **5** that you want to use.
☞ Select the speed setting value that you want to change.
☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and press "**OK**" to confirm.

! As a safety measure, the driver must carry out these operations when stationary.

Selection

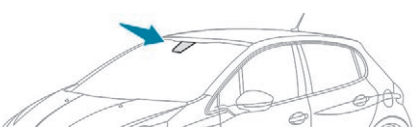


To select a memorised speed:

- ☞ Press and hold the "**+**" or "**-**" button; the system stops at the nearest memorised speed.
- ☞ Press and hold the "**+**" or "**-**" button again to select another memorised speed.

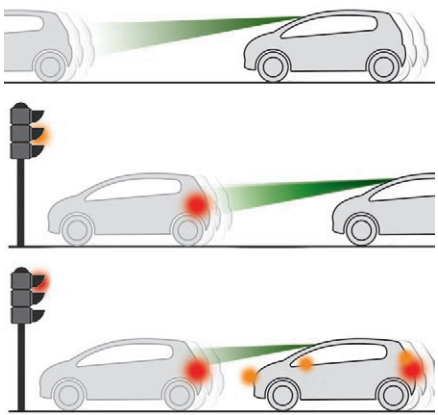
A reminder of the speed and the state of the system (on/off) is displayed in the instrument panel.

Active City Brake



A preventive driving assistance system that, using the laser sensor located at the top of the windscreen, automatically applies the vehicle's brakes if driving behind a vehicle that slows down rapidly, stops or is stationary.
The objective is to avoid a collision or reduce the speed of impact.
This system has been designed to improve driving safety.
It remains the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic and to assess the relative distance and speed of other vehicles.

! Active City Brake cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



When your vehicle is too close to or approaches the vehicle ahead too quickly, the system automatically applies the brakes to avoid a collision.

If operation is triggered:

- Display of a message.
- Illumination of the brake lamps.

The automatic braking is triggered as a last resort, if the driver fails to apply the brakes sufficiently firmly or at all, or to take avoiding action.

! The laser beam is invisible. Never look at the laser sensor with an optical instrument (magnifying glass, microscope, etc.): risk of eye injury.

Conditions for activation:

- Vehicles driving in the same lane.
- Not in too sharp a bend.
- Speed of your vehicle between 3 and 19 mph (5 and 30 km/h).
- Braking assistance systems (ABS, EBFD, EBA) in working order.
- Trajectory control systems (ASR, DSC) in working order and not deactivated.
- Operation of Active City Brake not triggered in the previous 10 seconds.

The automatic braking triggered:

- can be even more effective if the driver presses the brake pedal more firmly,
- may stop the vehicle, holding the brakes on for around 1.5 seconds when stationary to

allow the driver time to take back control of the vehicle,
- may cause the engine to stall,
- may give rise to a pumping noise, due to the pressurisation of the braking system.

! The collision can be automatically avoided if the speed difference between your vehicle and the one ahead is not more than 9 mph (15 km/h).
Above this threshold, the system will do what is possible to avoid or reduce the impact by lowering the speed of impact.

Activation/Deactivation

MENU



It is possible to activate or deactivate the Active City Brake from the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

The system state remains memorised when the ignition is switched off.
Each subsequent time the ignition is switched on, if the automatic emergency braking function is deactivated, a temporary message will be displayed to point this out when a speed threshold (6 mph (10 km/h)) is exceeded.

! **Deactivate the Active City Brake:**
- Following an impact to the windscreen close to the sensor.
- When towing a trailer.
- When the vehicle is being towed.
- When the vehicle is about to cross a toll barrier.
- When the vehicle is passing through an automatic car wash.

Operating limits

Not detected are:
- Pedestrians, animals, motorcyclists, cyclists.
- Fixed and non-reflective materials and objects (cardboard box, wall, etc.).
- Vehicles not travelling in the same direction.

This system will not trigger or intervene if the driver:
- presses the accelerator pedal firmly,
- turns the wheel sharply (avoiding manoeuvre).

Operating faults

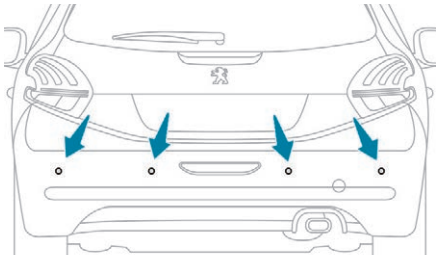
Clean or clear any dirt, mist or objects (stickers, leaves, etc.) from the top of the windscreen that could obstruct the laser's field of vision.

Misting of the windscreen or accumulations of snow on the bonnet could interfere with the operation of the laser. A message appears if the laser is obstructed.
Use windscreen demisting and regularly clean the area of the windscreen in front of the sensor.
Be particularly vigilant when driving in poor weather (very heavy rain, hail, fog, snow, etc.). This is because braking distances increase while the laser's calculation parameters remain the same.

In the following cases, you should have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop:
- The message "**Automatic braking system fault**" accompanied by an audible signal indicates that a fault has been detected.
- Following an impact, the system is automatically put out of service, it no longer works. The system detects the deployment of airbags.

! Do not attempt to remove, adjust or test the sensor.
Only a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is able to work on the system.

Parking sensors



Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

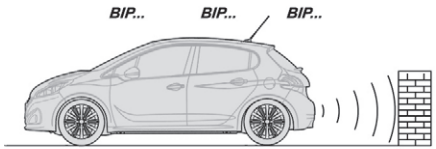
! This function is a manoeuvring aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must remain attentive and stay in control of their vehicle.
They must always check the vehicle's surroundings before undertaking a manoeuvre.
During the entire manoeuvre, the driver must ensure that the space remains clear.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

This is confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The information on proximity is given by an intermittent audible signal, whose frequency becomes quicker as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) allows the side on which the obstacle is located to be identified.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance



It supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that move progressively nearer to the vehicle (white: more distant obstacles; orange: close obstacles; red: very close obstacles).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

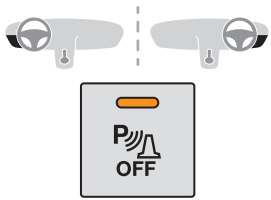
In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

i The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle – in the vehicle trajectory, in front or behind.

It is only available with Park Assist.
For more information on **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation/activation of the front and rear parking sensors

Without touch screen



☞ To deactivate or activate the system, press this button.

The indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is deactivated.

With touch screen

MENU

The deactivation or activation of the function is done in the **Driving/ Vehicle** menu.

The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towing device or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).

Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

Maintenance recommendations

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

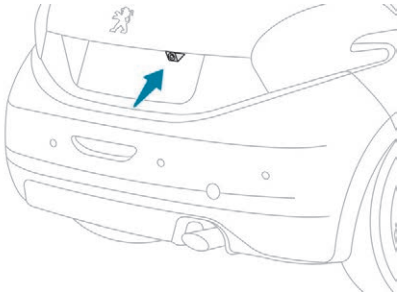
High-pressure jet wash
When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

Operating fault

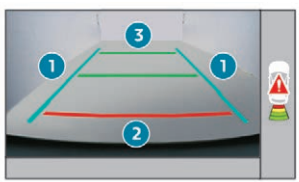
If a fault occurs when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Reversing camera



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The image is displayed on the touch screen.
The reversing camera function may be supplemented with parking sensors.



The superimposed representation of guide lines helps with the manoeuvre.
They are represented as lines marked "on the ground" and do not indicate the position of the vehicle in relation to tall obstacles (e.g. other vehicles).
Some distortion of the image is normal.

The blue lines **1** represent the general direction of the vehicle (the distance between them represents the width of your vehicle without the door mirrors).
The red line **2** represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The green lines **3** represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

! The reversing camera cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i **High-pressure jet wash**
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance from less than 30 cm from the lens of the camera.

i Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

i Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

Park Assist

The system detects a parking space and then provides assistance with the parallel parking manoeuvres.

It controls the steering and provides visual and audible information to the driver.
If you have a manual gearbox, the driver manages the acceleration, braking, gears and clutch.
With an automatic gearbox, the driver manages the acceleration, braking and gears.
The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

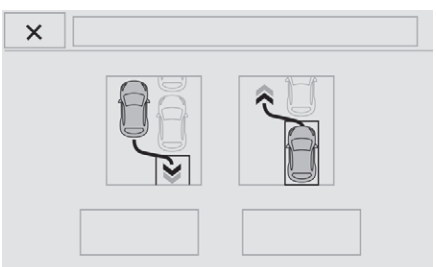
! The Park Assist system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must remain in control of their vehicle ensuring that the space remains clear during the manoeuvre.
In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could block the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) – Risk of injury!

For entry into a parallel parking space, the system does not detect spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.
The "Parking sensors" function activates automatically during the manoeuvres, so it is possible that a warning lamp illuminates on the screen, accompanied by an audible signal, without affecting the parking.

Changing tyre sizes (out-size tyres, winter tyres, etc.) can interfere with the correct operation of the parking sensors system.

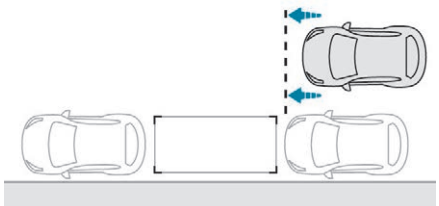
When the Park Assist is active, it prevents Stop & Start going into STOP mode.
In STOP mode, activating Park Assist restarts the engine.



The system provides assistance in entering and exiting a parking space when parallel parking.

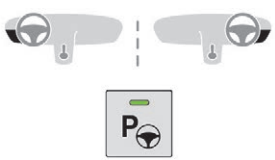
Entering a parallel parking space

☞ Once you have detected an available space, limit the speed of the vehicle to 12 mph (20 km/h).



☞ Position your vehicle before this space.

To activate the Park Assist system:



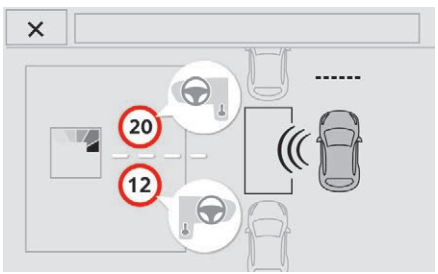
☞ Press this control.
The indicator lamp in the control remains off.

A message is displayed in the screen.

☞ Select the enter parking space manoeuvre.
The indicator lamp in the control comes on.

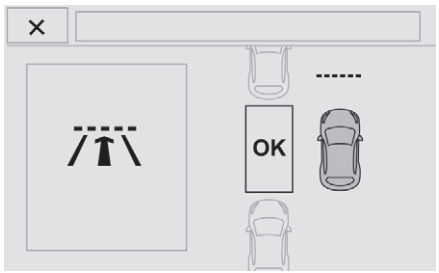


☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side.

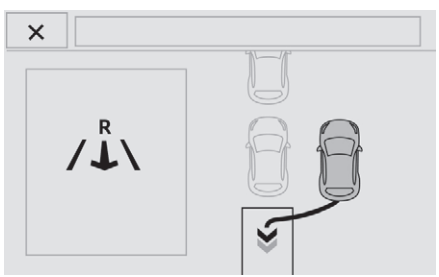


☞ Move forwards alongside the parking space at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) to measure it, keeping at a distance of between 0.5 and 1.5 metres from the row of parked vehicles.

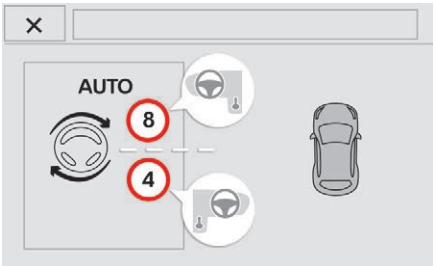
Once measurement is complete, if the space is large enough a message indicates that parking is possible.



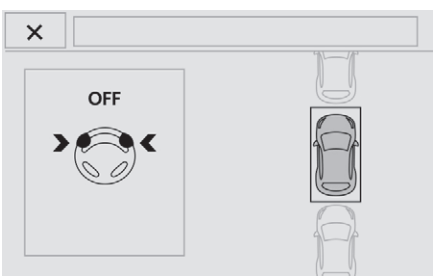
☞ Move your vehicle forward until a new message is displayed.



☞ Select reverse and release the steering wheel.



The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 5 mph (8 km/h), continue the manoeuvres following the information given by the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of manoeuvre message is displayed.
The indicator lamp in the control goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.

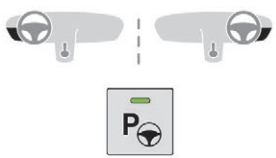


The driver takes back control of the vehicle's steering.

Exit from a parallel parking space

☞ When you want to exit from a parallel parking space, start the engine.

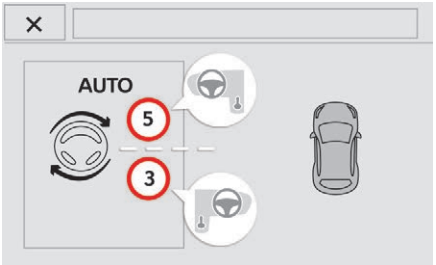
With the vehicle stationary, to activate the Park Assist system:



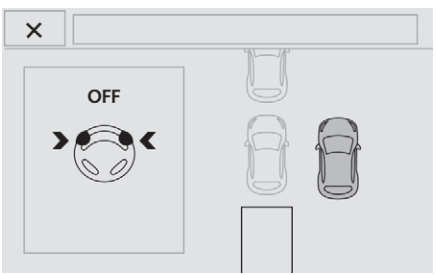
☞ Press this control.
The indicator lamp in the control remains off.

A message is displayed in the screen.

☞ Select the exit parking space manoeuvre.
The indicator lamp in the control comes on.
☞ Operate the direction indicator on the exit from parking side.
The direction indicator flashes throughout the manoeuvre, whatever the position of the control stalk.
☞ Select a forward or reverse gear then release the steering wheel.



The assisted exit from parking manoeuvre is in progress.
Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), continue the manoeuvres following the information given by the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of manoeuvre message is displayed.
The manoeuvre is complete once the front wheels of the vehicle are out of the parking space.
The indicator lamp in the control goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.

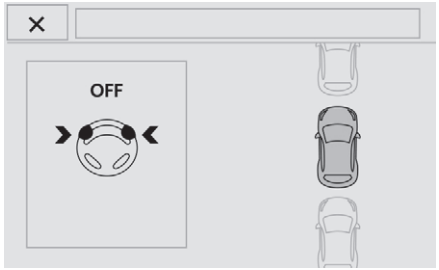


The driver takes back control of the vehicle's steering.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically:
- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- if no manoeuvre is performed within 5 minutes of selecting the type of manoeuvre,
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
- if the wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- if the driver presses the Park Assist control,
- if the vehicle cannot be properly positioned (too many manoeuvres to get the vehicle in or out),
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

A message is displayed in the screen.



The driver then takes back control of the vehicle's steering.

! If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the driver should reactivate it manually to repeat the measurement.

Deactivation

The system is switched off automatically:
- when towing a trailer,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system off for a prolonged period, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Malfunctions



In the event of a system fault, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep).
The indicator lamp in the control flashes for a few seconds. If the problem occurs while using the system, the indicator lamp goes off.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, these warning lamps come on in the instrument panel.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space.
Any object exceeding the dimensions of the vehicle (e.g. long or wide load) is not taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.

i In bad and wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by road dirt, ice or snow.
In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



PEUGEOT & TOTAL

A PARTNERSHIP FOR PERFORMANCE!

The PEUGEOT TOTAL team knows how to push back the limits of performance to win victories in the most difficult conditions, as confirmed by the first three places achieved in 2017.
To obtain these exceptional results, the PEUGEOT Sport teams chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the PEUGEOT 3008 DKR, a high-tech lubricant that protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.

TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is a high performance lubricant, the result of work done together by PEUGEOT and TOTAL R&D. Specially formulated for the engines in PEUGEOT vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO_2 emissions and keeps your engine clean.

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

PEUGEOT TOTAL
OFFICIAL PARTNERS

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

E5
E10

Petrol that meets standard EN228, mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN15376.

The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

B7 Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



B10 Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

XTL Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20
B30
B20 or B30 fuel that meets the standard EN16709 can be used with your Diesel engine. However, the use of this fuel, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could result in an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type Diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full.
If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle.
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact a dealer.

Fuel tank

Tank capacity:
- around **50 litres** (petrol).
- around **50 litres** (Diesel).
- around **45 litres** (BlueHDi Diesel).

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached in the fuel tank, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. **Approximately 5 litres** of fuel remain in the tank. When the warning lamp flashes, **very little fuel** remains in the tank.

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.
For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Refilling

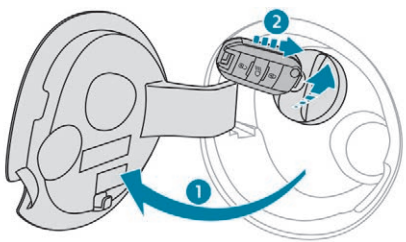
A sticker on the inner face of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine type.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

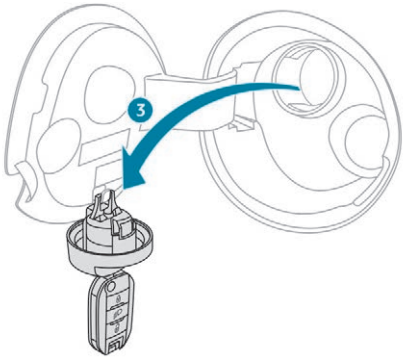
i The key cannot be removed from the lock until the filler cap is refitted.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.

To refuel in complete safety:

☞ **You must switch off the engine**.



☞ Open the fuel filler flap by pulling with a finger at the cut-out **1**.
☞ Insert the key in the filler cap, then turn it to the left **2**.



☞ Remove the filler cap and hook it onto the clip located on the inside of the filler flap **3**.
☞ Fill up the tank completely, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle**; this could cause malfunctions.

Once you have finished refuelling:
☞ Refit the filler cap.
☞ Turn the key to the right, then remove it from the filler cap.
☞ Close the fuel filler flap.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

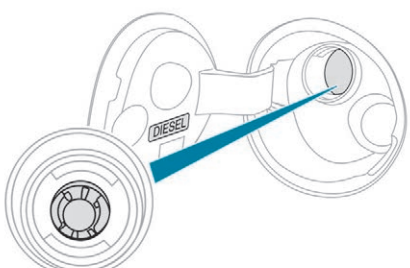
Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on the country where the product is sold.)
Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the Diesel tank, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling. **Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

Driving abroad
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Only use the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheels fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size
185/65 R15	9 mm
195/55 R16	
205/45 R17	7 mm

For more information on snow chains, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Towing device

Load distribution

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10% for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

Use towing devices and their genuine harnesses approved by PEUGEOT. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towing device is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing device is used.

Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.
Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 40 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, the wipers, the dipped beam headlamps, the courtesy lamps, etc.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

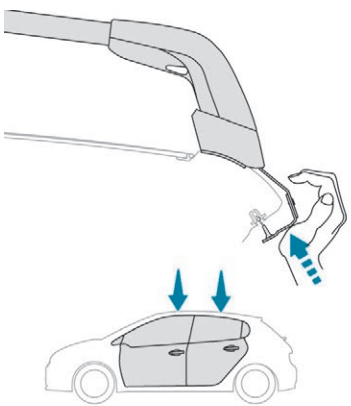
These functions will be automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes,
- for more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Fitting roof bars



When fitting transverse roof bars, take care to position them correctly on the retaining pins located in the door apertures.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the vehicle's anchorage points.
For transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle, refer to local legislation.

As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

Recommendations
Distribute the load evenly, making sure not to overload one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
On a long journey, check the security of the load at every stop.
Remove the roof bars when they are not in use.

Bonnet



Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

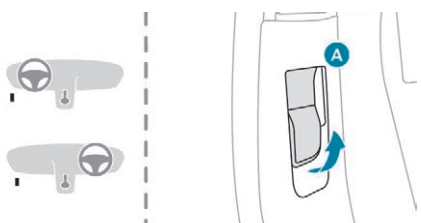
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

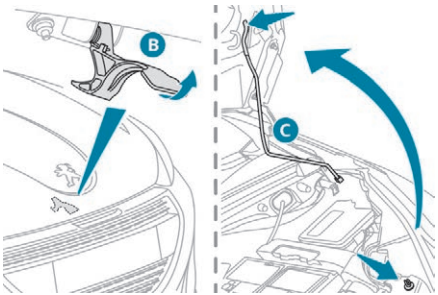
Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Opening

☞ Open the left-hand front door.



☞ Pull the release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.



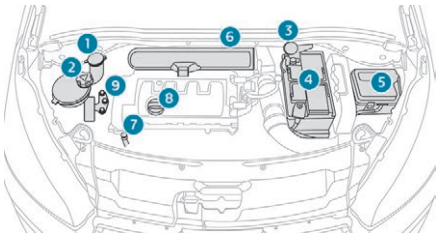
☞ Lift the safety catch **B** and raise the bonnet.
☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

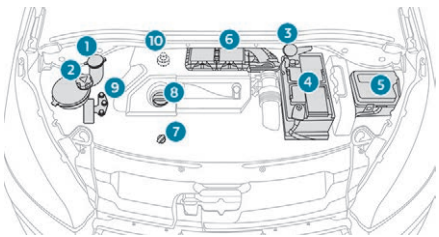
☞ Take the stay **C** out of its support slot.
☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

Engines

Petrol



Diesel



These engines are examples provided as a guide.
The locations of the following elements may vary:
- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.

1. Screenwash fluid tank.
2. Coolant tank.
3. Brake fluid tank.
4. Battery.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point.
10. Priming pump*

* Depending on engine.

! The Diesel circuit is under very high pressure.
All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The liquid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of it in the containers reserved for this purpose.

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

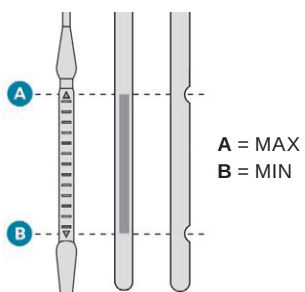
To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- Add more oil if necessary.
- After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for interval details for this operation.
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Changing the brake fluid

The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Draining the circuit

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly.
It is normal to top up the fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.
The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.
If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Screenwash fluid level



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid with antifreeze must be used that is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.).
Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)



The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Level of AdBlue

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.
To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on **AdBlue (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up the tank, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.
However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

Cabin filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged cabin filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)



The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an alert message.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.
For more information on **Checking the levels** and in particular on the Diesel additive level, refer to the corresponding section.
On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc/drum wear



For any information on checking brake disc/drum wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wheels and tyres

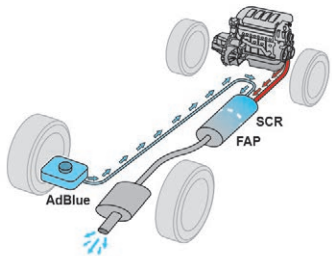


The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month and before a long journey.

The pressures given on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 31 mph (50 km/h), 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the values given on the label.
Under-inflation increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – Risk of an accident! Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces braking efficiency and control of the vehicle's steering. Regular inspections of the condition of tyres (tread and sides) and rims are recommended as well as making sure that valves are fitted.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance and the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)



To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres (1.6 BlueHDi engines) or 15 litres (1.5 BlueHDi engines).

Its capacity allows a driving range of around 5,600 miles (9,000 km), which may vary considerably depending on your driving style.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.

For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after travelling a distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.
In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

Freezing of the AdBlue®
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® is topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for private vehicles (for those versions with access to the AdBlue® tank via the fuel filler flap).

Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes below about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It should be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.

Never keep bottles or containers of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (at high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the vapour. Ammonia has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle.

Procedure

Before starting the top up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In winter, check that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. If not, due to freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into the tank. Park your vehicle somewhere warmer for a few hours before topping up.

! In the event of an AdBlue® breakdown, confirmed by the message "Add AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

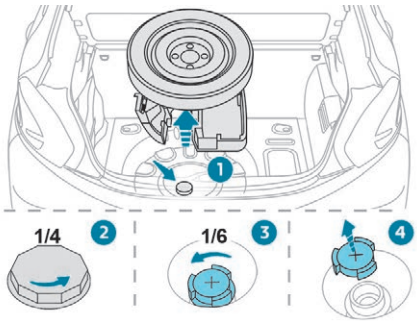
i For the specifics associated with the access configuration for the AdBlue® tank (via the boot or via the fuel filler flap), refer to the descriptions given in detail further on.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the side of the body, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **when topping up after a breakdown due to running out of AdBlue,** you must wait for at least 5 minutes before switching on the ignition again, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle or inserting the key in the switch.**
Switch on the ignition, then after a minimum of 10 seconds, start the engine.

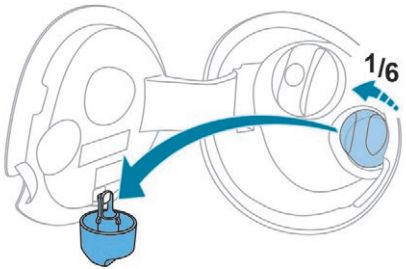
☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.

Access through the boot (1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)



☞ Raise the boot carpet then, depending on equipment, lift out the spare wheel and/or the storage box.
☞ Without pressing, turn the black cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise and lift it off.
☞ Turn the blue cap 1/6 of a turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Lift off the cap.

Access through the fuel filler flap (1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)



☞ With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank 1/6 of a turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Release the blue cap.

Refilling

☞ Obtain an AdBlue® container or bottle. After first checking the use-by date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container or bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue tank.

Or

☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

Important:
- To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:
  - To top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.

  Or
  - If filling in a service station, stop after the first automatic shut-off of the nozzle.
- If your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine – you must add at least 5 litres.

After refilling

Through the boot (1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)

- Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it 1/6 of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- Refit the black cap and turn it a quarter of a turn clockwise without pressing. Ensure that the indicator on the cap lines up with the indicator on the support.
- Depending on equipment, return the spare wheel and/or the storage box to the bottom of the boot.
- Refit the boot carpet and close the tailgate.

Through the fuel filler flap (1.5 litre BlueHDi Euro 6.2)

- Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it 1/6 of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- Close the fuel filler flap.

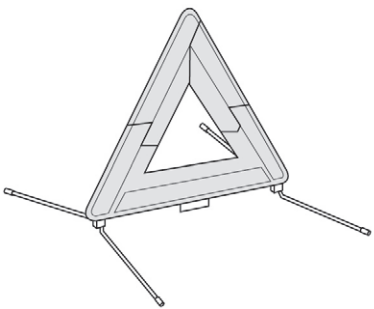
Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a suitable container or take them to your dealer.

Warning triangle

Before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

Refer to the manufacturer's instructions on using the triangle.

Placing the triangle on the road



- Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by the legislation in force in your country.

The triangle is available as an accessory; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with HDi engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
For versions with a manual priming pump, refer to the drawing of the underbonnet view.
If the tank on your vehicle is fitted with **Misfuel prevention**, refer to the corresponding section.

If the engine does not start the first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

1.5 BlueHDi (Euro 6.2) engine

- Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
- Operate the starter to run the engine.

If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

1.6 BlueHDi (Euro 6.1) engine

- Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- Repeat the operation 10 times.
- Operate the starter to run the engine.

Other engines

- Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.



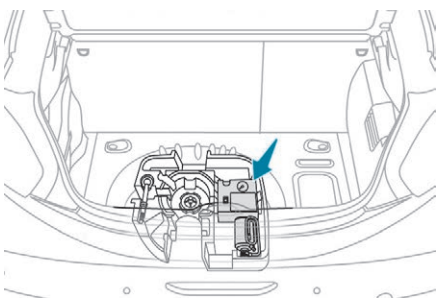
- Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance on the first press).
- Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Put the cover in place and clip it in.
- Close the bonnet.

Temporary puncture repair kit

Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

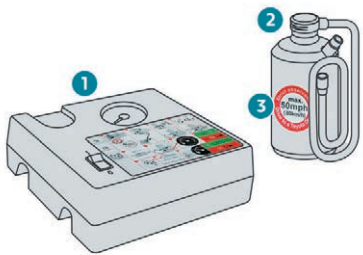
Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the under floor storage, under the boot floor.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

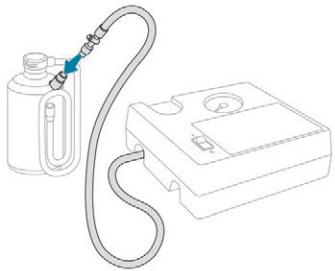
Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge bottle, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

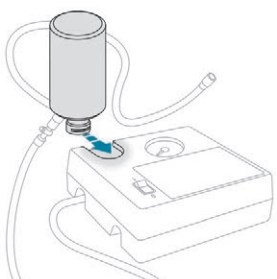
Repair procedure

- Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



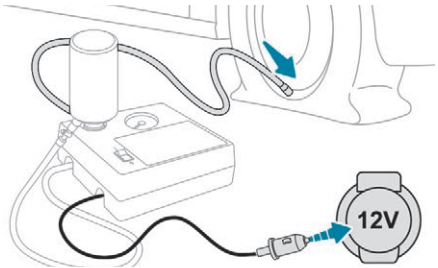
- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- Turn the sealant bottle over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.

☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.

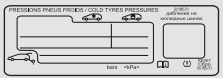
☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.

☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

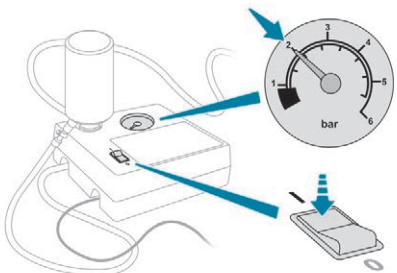


! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

i 

The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

☞ Switch on the ignition.



☞ Start the compressor by turning the switch to the "**I**" position until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after about 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

☞ Place the switch in the "**O**" position.

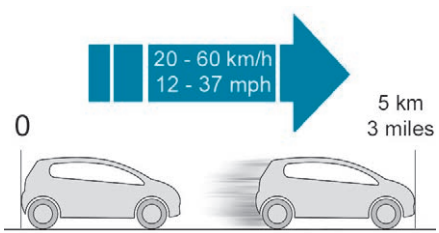
☞ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.

☞ Replace the cap on the valve.

☞ Remove the kit.

☞ Remove and then store the bottle of sealant.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



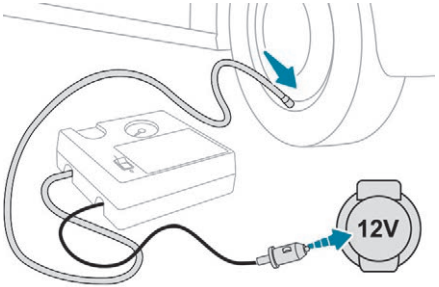
- Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

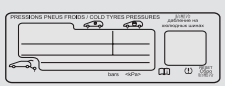
i You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

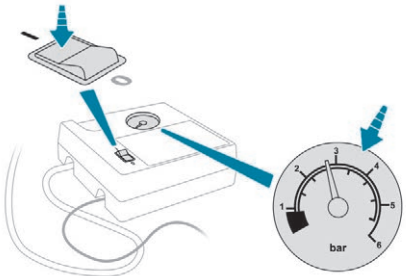


- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.

i



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "**O**" position.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with the repaired tyre; see a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

Under-inflation detection

After a tyre repair, this warning lamp will remain on until the system is reinitialised.

For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

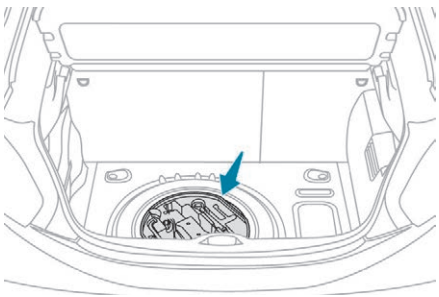
Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

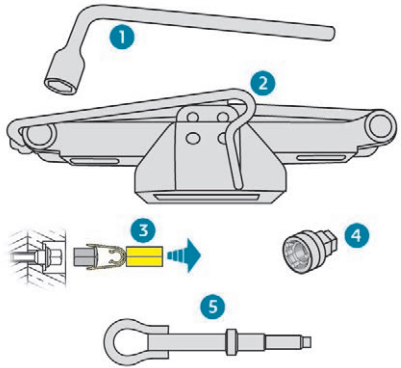
Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.
To gain access:
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the carrier box containing the tools.

List of tools



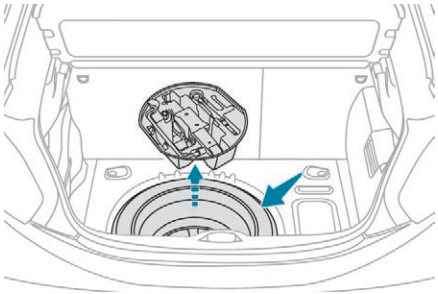
1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integrated handle.
   Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Bolt "cover" tool.
   For removing the bolt protectors (covers) on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts.
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
5. Towing eye.
   For more information on **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheel with trim
When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

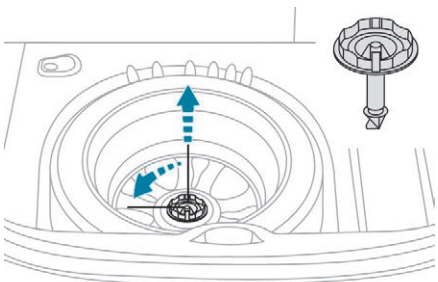
The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.
According to country, the spare wheel may be steel, alloy or of the "space-saver" type.

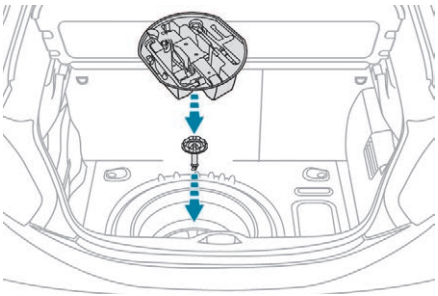
Removing the wheel



- Slacken the central nut.
- Remove the fixing device (nut and bolt).
- Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the wheel back in place

- Put the wheel back in its housing.



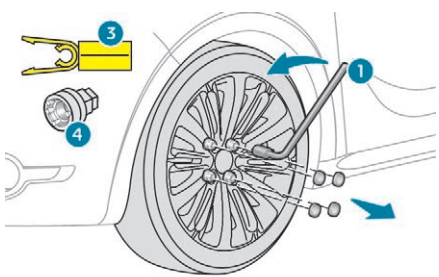
- Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- Position the fixing device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- Tighten fully until the central nut clicks, to retain the wheel correctly.
- Put the carrier box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.

If there is no wheel in the well, the fixing device (nut and bolt) cannot be put back in place.

Removing a wheel

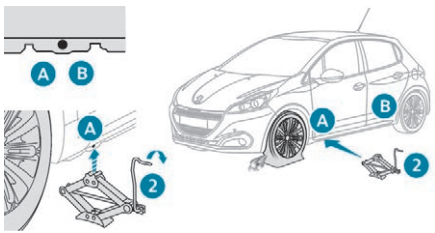
Parking the vehicle
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
Apply the parking brake.
Switch off the ignition.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to block the wheels.
With an automatic gearbox, place the lever in position **P** to block the wheels.
Check for the fixed illumination of the parking brake indicator lamps in the instrument panel.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

List of operations



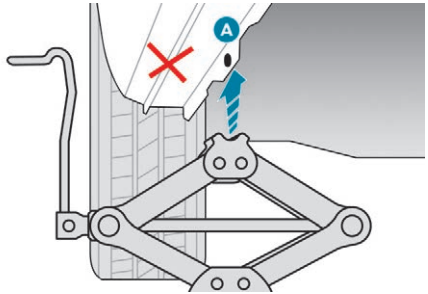


- Remove the bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **3** (depending on equipment).
- Fit the security socket **4** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt (depending on equipment).
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.

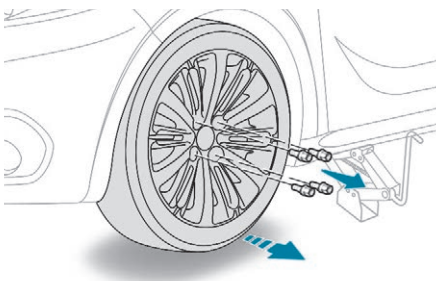


- Place the foot of the jack **2** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

Ensure that the jack is stable on a surface that is not loose or slippery and positioned strictly at jacking points A or B under the vehicle, making sure that the jack head is centred at the contact point on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing or slipping – risk of injury!

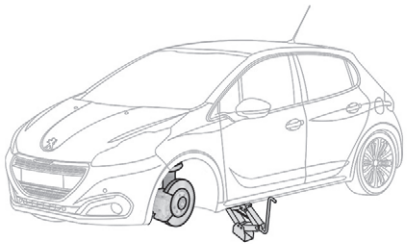


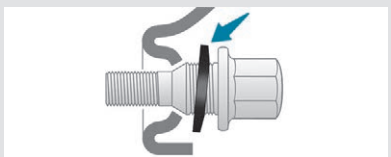
- Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be correctly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

Fitting the wheel

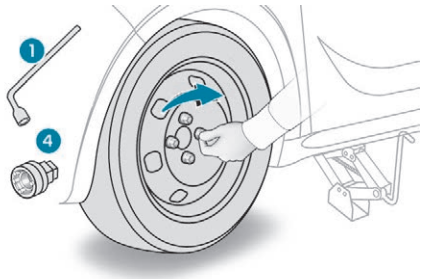




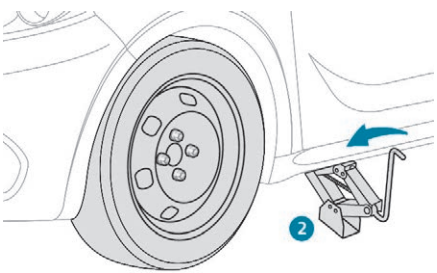
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

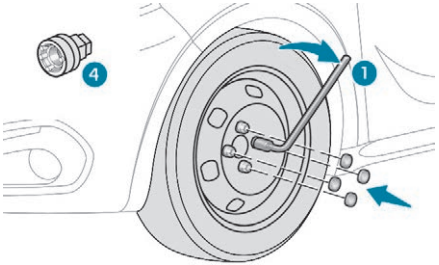
List of operations



- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using wheelbrace **1** fitted with security socket **4** (depending on equipment).
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle again fully.
- Fold jack **2** and remove it.



- Tighten the security bolt using wheelbrace **1** fitted with security socket **4** (depending on equipment).
- Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **1** only.
- Refit the bolt covers on each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- Store the tools in the carrier box.

After changing a wheel
To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.
If your vehicle has a "standard" 15-inch spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
If your vehicle is fitted with 16 or 17-inch wheels, use the "space-saver" type spare wheel and do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

The lamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes – Risk of serious burns!
- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

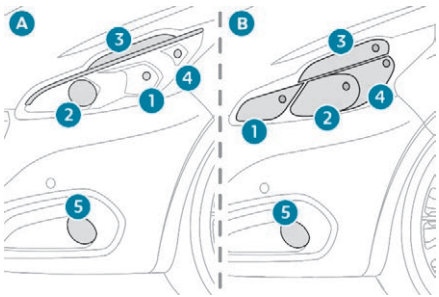
Light-emitting diodes (LED)
For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Halogen bulbs
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Front lamps

A. Model with light guide

B. Model without light guide

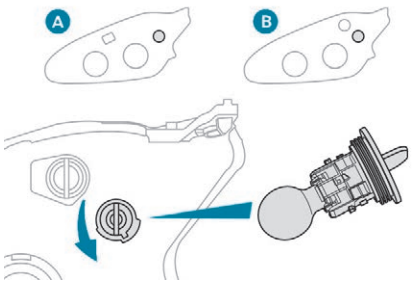


1. **Main beam headlamps (H7-55W).**
2. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).**
3. **Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LED or W5-5W).**
4. **Direction indicators (PWY-24W).**
5. **Front foglamps (H11-55W).**
   (with Cornering lighting function, depending on version)

LEDs: light-emitting diodes.

Direction indicators

Quicker flashing of the direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

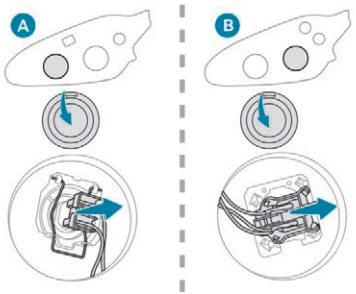


- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- Pull out the bulb and replace it.

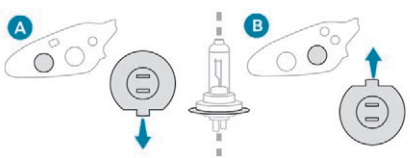
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Amber colour bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs with identical colour and specifications.
To refit, close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the leak-tightness of the lamp.

Dipped beam headlamps

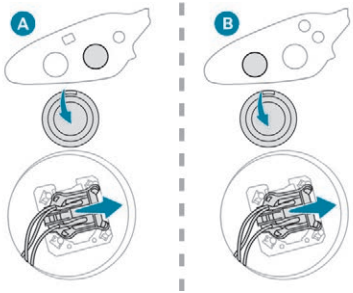


- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Spread the spring to release the bulb (model **A**).
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

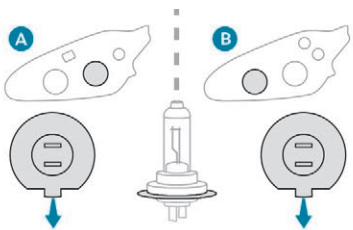


To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order, directing the bulb's positioning lug downwards (model **A**) or upwards (model **B**).

Main beam headlamps

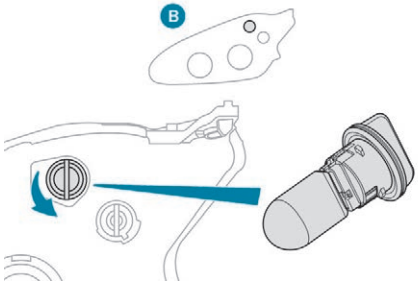


- Remove the main headlamp connector.
- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.



To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order, directing the bulb's positioning lug downwards.

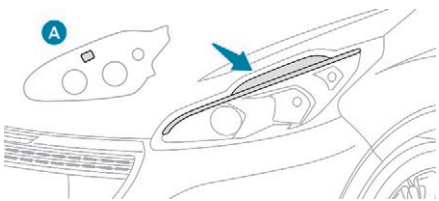
Daytime running lamps/sidelamps



- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- Pull out the bulb and replace it.

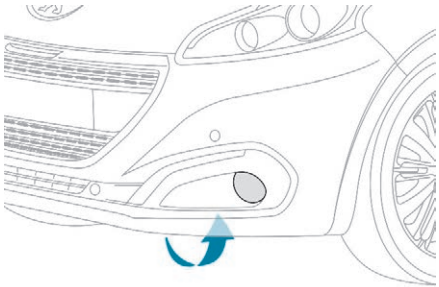
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of LED bulb, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

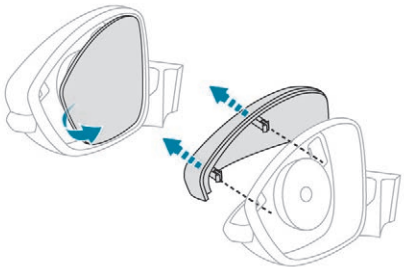
Foglamps/directional lamps



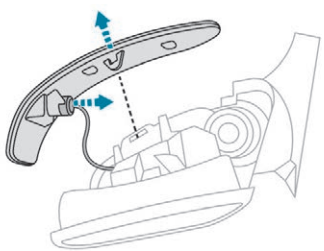
- Access to the front foglamp is through the aperture below the bumper.
- Disconnect the bulb holder connector by pressing on the top of the tab.
- Extract the bulb holder by pressing on the two clips (top and bottom).
- Replace the module.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the module.
You can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.

Integrated direction indicator side repeaters



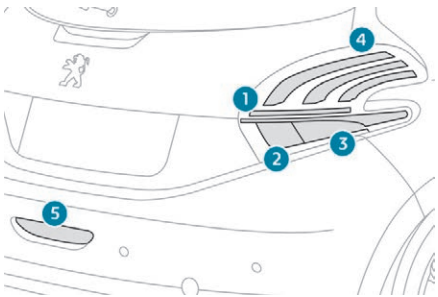
- Insert a flat screwdriver between the door mirror glass and its base.
- Tilt the screwdriver and use it as a lever to extract the glass.
- Unclip the shell of the door mirror by pressing on the two fixing clips.



- Press the central tab and remove the side repeater.
- Pull out the bulb holder and replace the faulty bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.
To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps



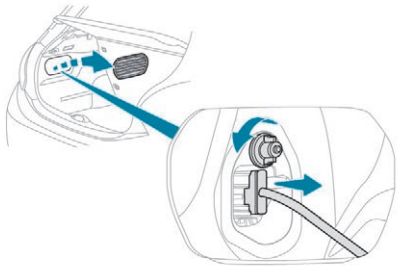
1. **Brake lamps (LED).**
2. **Reversing lamps (P21W).**
3. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
4. **Sidelamps (LED).**
5. **Foglamp (P21W).**

LEDs: light-emitting diodes.

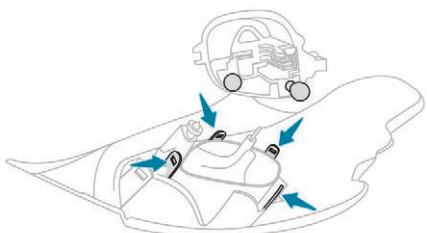
Reversing lamps and direction indicators

These two bulbs are changed from inside the boot:

- Open the boot.



- Remove the access grille from the corresponding side trim panel.
- Unscrew and remove the nut.
- Disconnect the lamp unit connector.
- Unclip the lamp unit and carefully extract it pulling straight towards you.

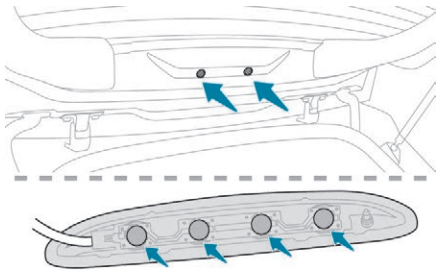


- Press the four tabs and remove the bulb holder.
- Turn the bulb a quarter turn, pull it out and fit a new bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Make sure to engage the lamp unit in its guides while keeping it in line with the vehicle.
Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without damaging the lamp.

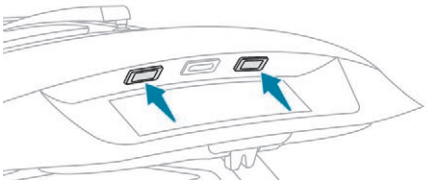
Third brake lamp



- Unscrew the fixing pins on each side of the lamp unit, without removing them completely.
- Push on the screws to unclip the lamp unit.
- Disconnect the lamp unit connector.
- Remove the lamp unit from the outside.
- Turn the bulb holder corresponding to the faulty bulb a quarter turn and pull it out.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Number plate lamps

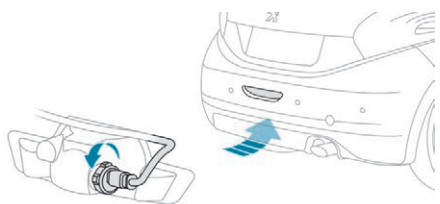


To facilitate removal, perform this procedure with the tailgate half open.

- Insert a thin screwdriver into the cut-out outside the lens.
- Push it outwards.
- Remove the lens.
- Replace the faulty bulb.

To refit, press the lens to clip it in.

Foglamp



For access, pass your hand under the bumper.

- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

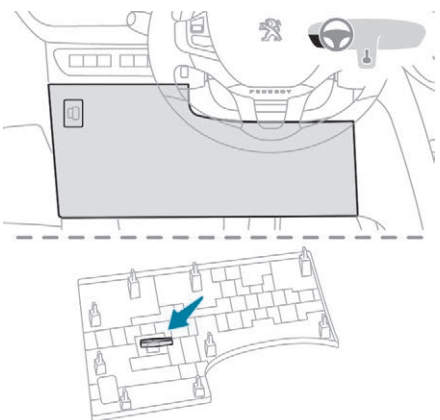
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.
For the replacement of these bulbs, you can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tools

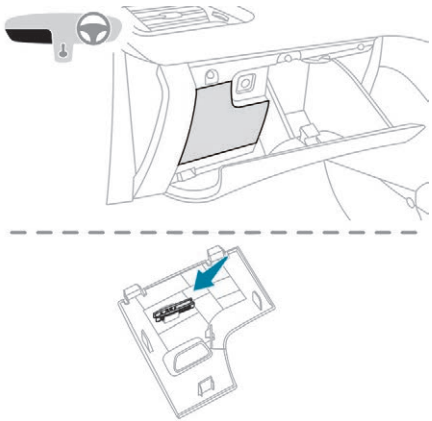
The extraction tweezers are fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover or glove box fusebox cover.

Dashboard



- Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- Disengage the cover fully and turn it over.
- Remove the carrier on the back of which the tweezers are fitted.

Glove box



- Open the glove box lid.
- Unclip the fusebox cover by pulling at top right.
- Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.
- Remove the carrier on the back of which the tweezers are fitted.

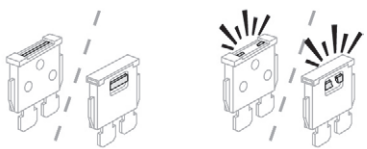
Before changing a fuse:

- immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- identify the failed fuse using the allocation tables and the diagrams given in the following pages.

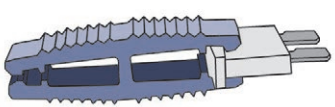
To remove or fit a fuse, it is essential to:

- use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); use of a different rating may cause malfunctions (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good **Failed**



Tweezers

Professional repairers: for full information on the fuses and relays, consult the "Methods" wiring information and diagrams available from a PEUGEOT dealer.

The fuse allocation tables and the corresponding diagrams are available from a PEUGEOT dealer or from a qualified workshop.

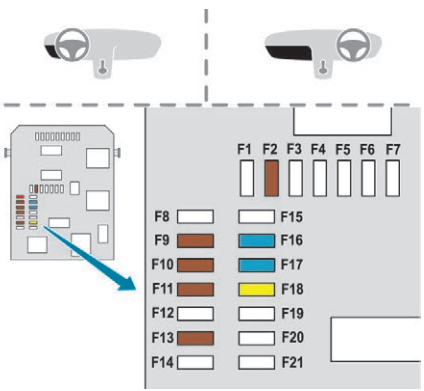
The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installing electrical accessories

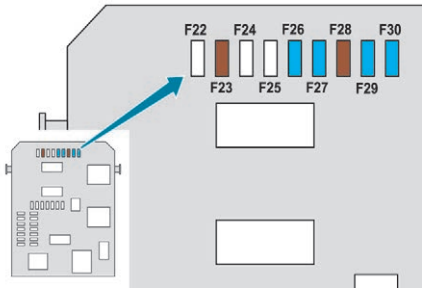
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! PEUGEOT accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Left-hand side

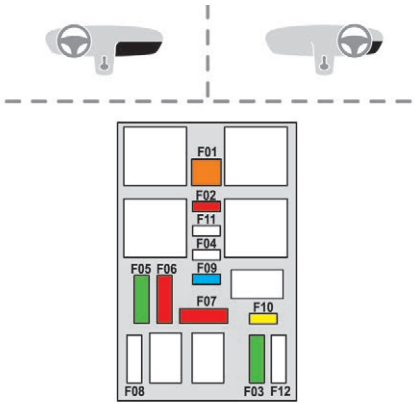


Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F2	5 A	Door mirrors, headlamps, diagnostic socket.
F9	5 A	Alarm.
F10	5 A	Independent telematic unit, trailer interface unit.
F11	5 A	Electrochrome interior rear view mirror, additional heating.
F13	5 A	Hi-Fi amplifier, parking sensors.
F16	15 A	Front 12 V socket.
F17	15 A	Audio system, audio system (accessory).
F18	20 A	Touch screen.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F23	5 A	Vanity mirrors, map reading lamps.
F26	15 A	Horn.
F27	15 A	Screenwash pump.
F28	5 A	Anti-theft.
F29	15 A	Air conditioning compressor.
F30	15 A	Rear wiper.

Right-hand side

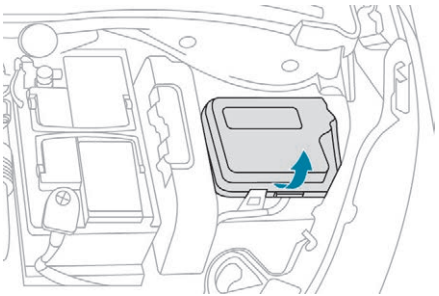


Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F01	40 A	Heated rear screen.
F02	10 A	Heated door mirrors.
F03	30 A	Front one-touch windows.
F05	30 A	Rear one-touch windows.
F06	10 A	Folding door mirrors.
F07	10 A	Folding door mirrors.
F09	15 A	Heated front seats.
F10	20 A	Hi-Fi amplifier.

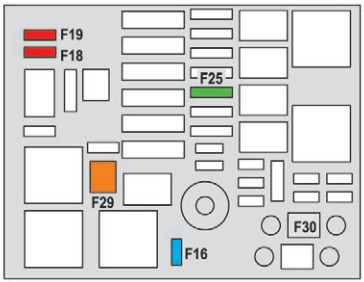
Engine compartment

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- Unclip the cover.
- Change the fuse.
- After the operation, close the cover very carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F16	15 A	Front foglamps.
F18	10 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F25	30 A	Headlamp washer relay (after-market).
F29	40 A	Front wiper motor.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries

Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

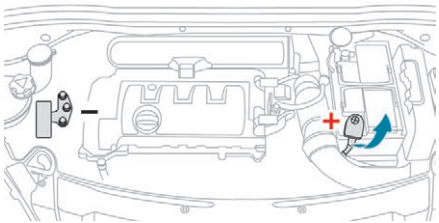
The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the next engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

To access it:

- ☞ Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.
- ☞ Secure the bonnet stay.



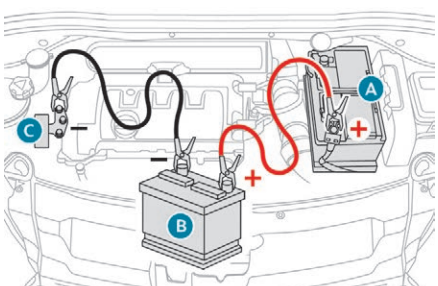
☞ Remove the plastic cover to access the (**+**) terminal.

The (**-**) battery terminal is not accessible. A remote earth point is located on the engine mounting.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

☞ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or of the booster.

☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).

☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.

☞ Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.

☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle, then disconnect the jump leads in the reverse order.

☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

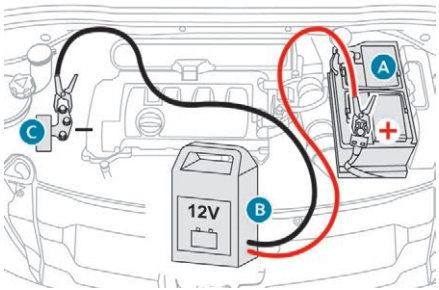
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you wish to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

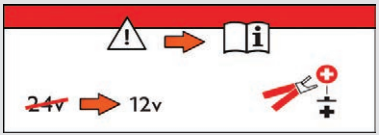
☞ Switch off the ignition.
☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



☞ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
☞ If your vehicle has one, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
☞ Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

!


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

Disconnecting the battery

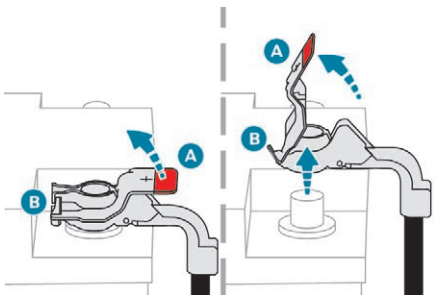
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.
Before disconnecting the battery:
☞ close all openings (doors, boot, windows, etc.),

- switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

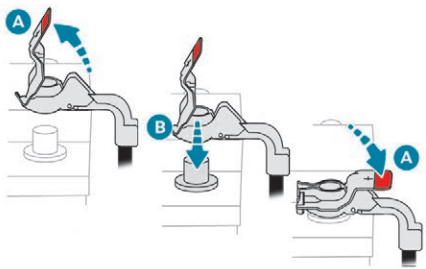
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise the lever **A** fully.
- Refit the open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
- Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Before disconnecting

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.
Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

Following reconnection

After each time that the battery has been reconnected, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to allow the electronic systems to initialise. However, if minor problems persist after this procedure, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the date and time,
- the radio preset stations.

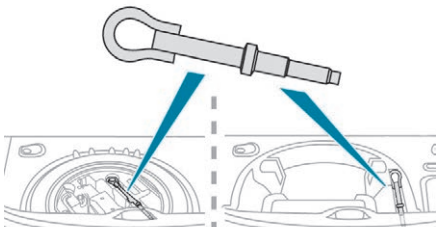
Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

General recommendations
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.
In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- when it is not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, engine running,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar, etc. available.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.
To gain access:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the carrier box.

Towing your vehicle

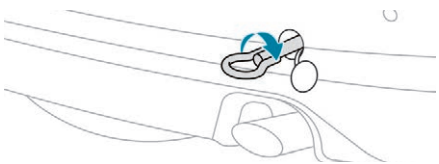


- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at bottom right.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.

- ☞ Place the gearbox in neutral.
  Failure to follow this instruction may cause damage to some components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance when the engine is restarted.

- ☞ Unlock the steering by turning the ignition key one notch and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also given on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

Towing using a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of approximately 60 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Engines and towed loads – PETROL

Engine	1.2 PureTech 68		1.2 PureTech 82	1.2 PureTech 82 S&S
Gearboxes	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Manual 5-speed STT (BVM5)**
Code	**EB2FB MA**	**EB2FAD MA**	**EB2F MA**	**EB2FA MA STT**
Model codes CC... CA...	**HMP6**	**CCHMMP – CCHMMP/1**	**HMZ6 - HMZ0**	**HMRP/S**
Cubic capacity (cm^3)	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	50	50	60	60
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	450 (PV) 485 (SMV)	450 (PV) 485 (SMV)	820 (PV/SMV) 920 (LCV)	820
Unbraked trailer (kg)	450	450	520	520
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	46	46	46	46

PV: Passenger Vehicle.

SMV: Specialised Motor Vehicle.

LCV: Light Commercial Vehicle.

Engine	1.2 PureTech 110 S&S		1.2 PureTech 110 S&S		1.6 VTi 115
Gearboxes	**Manual 5-speed STT (BVM5)**	**Automatic 6-speed STT (BVA6)**	**Manual 6-speed STT (BVM6)**	**Automatic 6-speed STT (BVA6)**	**Automatic 6-speed (BVA6)**
Code	**EB2DT/DTM BE STT**	**EB2DT/DTM AT6III STT**	**EB2ADT MB6 STT**	**EB2ADT AT6III STT**	**EC5F AT6III**
Model codes CC... CA...	**HNZ6/S – HNV6/S HNV0/DS**	**HNZT/S – HNVT/S HNVA/DS**	**CCHNPS/S – CCHNPS/1S**	**CCHNPN/S – CCHNPN/1S**	**CUNFPT**
Cubic capacity (cm^3)	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	80	80	81	81	88
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	960 (EB2DT) 450 (EB2DTM)	960 (EB2DT) 450 (EB2DTM)	1,000	960	970
Unbraked trailer (kg)	570 (EB2DT) 450 (EB2DTM)	560 (EB2DT) 450 (EB2DTM)	570	560	570
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	46	46	46	46	46

Engines and towed loads – DIESEL

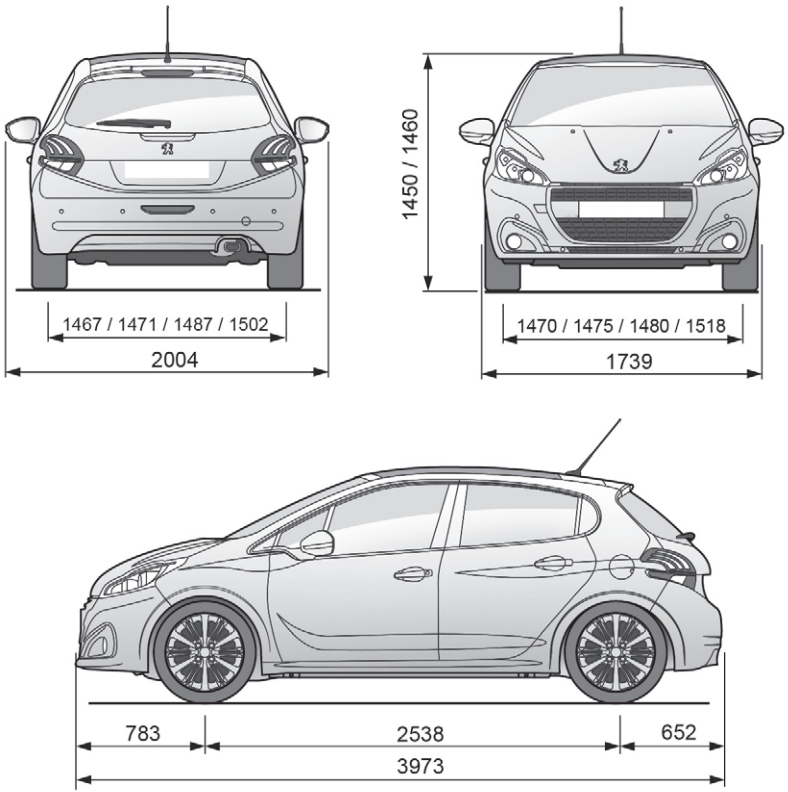
Engine	1.6 HDi 75	1.6 BlueHDi 75	1.6 BlueHDi 75 S&S	1.6 litre HDi 92
Gearboxes	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Manual 5-speed STT (BVM5)**	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**
Code	**DV6EM BE**	**DV6FE BE**	**DV6FE BE STT**	**DV6D/DM BE**
Model codes	**9HKC**	**BHW6**	**BHW6/1S**	**9HP0-9HJC**
Cubic capacity (cm^3)	1,560	1,560	1,560	1,560
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	55	55	55	68
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% slope (kg)	970	660	410	970
Unbraked trailer (kg)	570	570	410	570
Recommended nose weight (kg)	46	46	46	46

Engine	1.5 BlueHDi 100 S&S	1.6 BlueHDi 100	1.6 BlueHDi 100 S&S	1.6 BlueHDi 120 S&S
Gearboxes	**Manual 6-speed STT (BVM6)**	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Manual 5-speed STT (BVM5)**	**Manual 6-speed STT (BVM6)**
Code	**DV5RD MB6 STT**	**DV6FD BE**	**DV6FD BE STT**	**DV6FC MCM STT**
Model codes	**YHYS/S**	**BHY6**	**BHY6/1S**	**BHZM/S**
Cubic capacity (cm^3)	1,499	1,560	1,560	1,560
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	75	70	70	88
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% slope (kg)	975	970	970 1,100 (LCV)	960
Unbraked trailer (kg)	570	570	570	570
Recommended nose weight (kg)	46	46	46	46

LCV: Light Commercial Vehicle.

Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

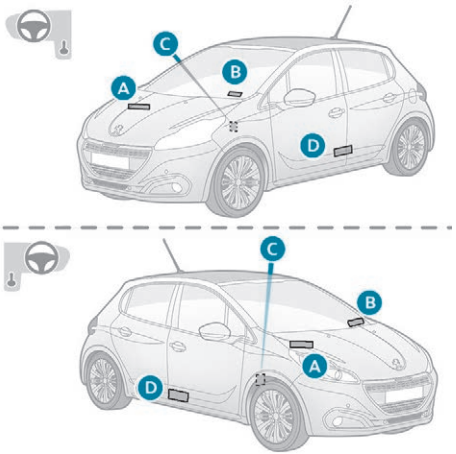


Commercial version

Number of seats: 2 people.
Effective boot volume: 1.062 m^3.
Effective floor length: 1.335 m.
Effective width for wheel arches: 1.042 m.
Effective width in the centre: 1.061 m.
Effective height in the centre: 0.857 m.

Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.



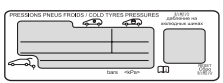
A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the suspension damper mounting.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.
The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
This tamperproof label is affixed to the front pillar, driver's side.

It bears the following information:
- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised vehicle weight (the Gross Vehicle Weight or GVW),
- the maximum authorised vehicle + trailer weight (the Gross Train Weight or GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyre/paint label.



This label is affixed to the centre pillar, driver's side.
It bears the following information on the tyres:
- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Audio system



Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Radio	2
Media	3
Audio settings	5
Frequently asked questions	5

! For safety reasons, the vehicle must always be stationary for the driver to perform operations that require close attention.
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off after activation of energy economy mode.

First steps

On/Off, volume adjustment.

SRC/BAND — Select the source:
FM1, FM2, AM, CD, AUX.

Adjust audio settings:
sound ambience, treble, bass, loudness, left/right balance, automatic volume.

Automatic search for a lower radio frequency.
Select the previous CD track.
Scroll in a list.
Press and hold: rewind.

LIST — Display the list of stations received, the CD/MP3 tracks or folders.
Press and hold: update the list of stations received.

Manual search step by step for a higher radio frequency.
Select the next MP3 folder.
Scroll in a list.

Manual search step by step for a lower radio frequency.
Select the previous MP3 folder.
Scroll in a list.

Cancel the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

Automatic search for a higher radio frequency.
Select the next CD track.
Scroll in a list.
Press and hold: fast forward.

MENU — Access to the main menu.

Select a preset radio station.
Radio, press and hold: store a station.

Eject CD.

Steering mounted controls



Radio: select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu.



Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD/MP3: select the next track.
CD: press and hold: fast forward.



Change the audio source.
Confirm a selection.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD/MP3: select the previous track.
CD: press and hold: rewind.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute on: cut the sound by simultaneously pressing the volume up and down buttons.
Mute off: press one of the two volume buttons.

Radio

Presetting a station

SRC /BAND

Press the **SRC/BAND** button repeatedly to select the FM1, FM2 or AM waveband.



Press and hold a button to preset the station being listened to. The name of the station is displayed and an audible signal confirms that it has been preset.

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS tracking mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Selecting a station



Press a button to listen to the corresponding preset station.

Managing the list

LIST

Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received in alphabetical order.

▲ ▼

Select the desired radio station by pressing one of the buttons.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶

Briefly press one of the buttons to change to the next or previous letter.

LIST

Press and hold **LIST** to build or update the list of stations; audio reception is cut momentarily.

RDS

RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station during a journey.

MENU

Press **MENU**.

▲ ▼

Select "**Radio**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

▲ ▼

Select "**RDS**".

OK Confirm with **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**On**" or "**Off**" to switch **RDS** on or off.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Receiving TA messages

i The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

MENU Press **MENU**.

▲ ▼ Select "**Radio**".

OK Confirm with **OK**.

▲ ▼ Select "**Traffic TA**".

OK Confirm with **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**On**" or "**Off**" to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic messages.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Displaying RADIO TEXT

i Radio Text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

MENU Press **MENU**.

▲ ▼ Select "**Radio**".

OK Confirm with **OK**.

▲ ▼ Select "**INFO TEXT**".

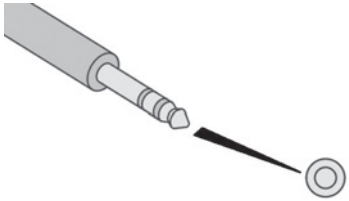
OK Confirm with **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**On**" or "**Off**" to switch Radio Text on or off.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Media

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

SRC /BAND Press the **SRC/BAND** button repeatedly until the "**AUX**" source is displayed.

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Management of the controls is via the portable device.

CD player

Insert a CD in the player; play begins automatically.
Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player.
The audio system searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

SRC /BAND Press the **SRC/BAND** button repeatedly to select "**CD**".

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track in the list.

Press one of these buttons to select the previous or next folder in the order chosen.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing a compilation

LIST Press **LIST** to display the folder structure of the compilation.

Select a line in the list.

OK Confirm with "**OK**".

Jump a page.

Select a folder/Playlist.

OK Start play of the chosen track.

Go up one level.

Go back to the first level to select the track classification:

- By **Folders**: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order, ignoring the folder structure.
- By **Playlist**: depending on the playlists saved.

Play mode

MENU Press **MENU**.

Select "**Media** ".

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Select the desired play mode.

OK Confirm with **OK** to save the changes.

The play modes available are:

- Normal: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- Random: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- Random all: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- Repeat: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

Information and advice

The audio system can only play files with ".mp3", ".wma" or ".wav" extensions.

To avoid any playback or display issues, it is advisable to create file names that have less than 20 characters and without using any special characters (e.g. " ?.; ù).

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard when recording the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for a given disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Playlists accepted are types ".m3u" and ".pls". The system can recognise up to 5,000 files in 500 folders on 8 levels.

On a given disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 levels. However, it is recommended that this be kept to 2 levels so as to limit the time taken to access and play the CD.
The folder structure is not observed during playback.

Audio settings



Press ♫ to display the audio settings menu.

The settings available are:
- AMBIENCE,
- BASS,
- TREBLE,
- LOUDNESS,
- L/R BALANCE,
- AUTO VOLUME.



Select the setting to adjust.

OK Confirm with **OK**.



Adjust the setting.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

The AMBIENCE, TREBLE and BASS audio settings are different and independent for each sound source.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Fader, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When changing the settings for treble and bass, the ambiance setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, treble and bass are reset to zero.	Choosing an ambience imposes settings for treble and bass. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the treble and bass settings or the ambience setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS mode and start a new search for the station so that the system can check whether a stronger transmitter is available in the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS tracking mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the SRC button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2) on which the stations are stored.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format that cannot be played by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Media" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Because of low quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.

In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.	In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.	
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Audio system/Bluetooth®



Contents

First steps	1
Steering mounted controls	2
Radio	2
Media	3
Telephone	6
Audio settings	8
Configuration	9
Frequently asked questions	9

! For safety reasons, the vehicle must always be stationary for the driver to perform operations that require close attention.
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off after activation of energy economy mode.

First steps

On/Off, volume adjustment.

Adjust audio options: sound ambience, treble, bass, loudness, distribution, left/right balance, front/rear balance, automatic volume.

Automatic search for a lower radio frequency.
Select the previous CD, USB track.
Scroll in a list.
Press and hold: rewind.

LIST Display the list of stations received, the CD/USB tracks or folders.
Press and hold: update the list of stations received.

Cancel the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

Automatic search for a higher radio frequency.
Select the next CD, USB track.
Scroll in a list.
Press and hold: fast forward.

MENU Access to the main menu.

Select preset radio station.
Radio, press and hold: store a station.
Other than radio: see the corresponding sections.

Eject CD.

SRC Select the source:
Radio: FM1, FM2, AM, CD, USB, AUX, Streaming.
Telephone: accept an incoming call.
Telephone, press and hold: end a call, access the calls log for the connected telephone.

Steering mounted controls



Radio: select the previous/next preset radio station.
CD/USB: select the genre/artist/ folder from the classification list.
Select the previous/next item in a menu.



Radio: automatic search for higher frequency.
CD/MP3/USB: select the next track.
CD/USB: press and hold: fast forward.



Change the audio source.
Confirm a selection.
Call/end call on the telephone.
Press and hold: access to the calls list.



Radio: automatic search for lower frequency.
CD/MP3/USB: select the previous track.
CD/USB: press and hold: rewind.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute on: cut the sound by simultaneously pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons.
Mute off: press one of the two volume buttons.

Radio

Presetting a station

SRC / Press **SRC/TEL** repeatedly to select the FM1, FM2 or AM waveband.



Press and hold a button to preset the station being listened to. The name of the station is displayed and an audible signal confirms that it has been preset.

i The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS tracking mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Selecting a station



Press a button to listen to the corresponding preset station.

Managing a list

LIST Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received in alphabetical order.

Select the desired radio station using one of the buttons.

OK Confirm with "**OK**".

Briefly press one of the buttons to change to the next or previous letter.

LIST Press and hold **LIST** to build or update the list of stations; audio reception is cut momentarily.

Entering a frequency

MENU Press **MENU**.



Select "**Radio**".



Select "**Write freq.**".

Press **+**,

or

press **–** to select the desired frequency.

OK Confirm with "**OK**".

RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

MENU With source FM1 or FM2, press **MENU**.

Select "**Radio**".

Select or deselect "**RDS**" to switch RDS on or off.

OK Confirm with "**OK**" to save the setting.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

MENU Press **MENU**.

Select "**Radio**".

Select or deselect "**TA**" to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic messages.

OK Confirm with "**OK**" to save the setting.

Displaying RADIO TEXT

Radio Text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

MENU With the radio displayed on the screen, press **MENU**.

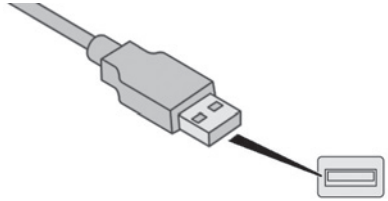
Select "**Radio**".

Select or deselect "**TXT**" to activate or deactivate the display of Radio Text.

OK Confirm with "**OK**" to save the setting.

Media

USB socket



This unit comprises a USB socket and an auxiliary Jack socket, depending on model.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected.
The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

SRC / Press **SRC/TEL** repeatedly to select "**USB**".

Press one of these buttons to select the previous or next track in the list.

Press one of these buttons to select the previous or next folder according to the category chosen.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

LIST Press **LIST** to display the structure of the folders in the compilation.

Select a line in the list.

OK Confirm with "**OK**".

Go up a level in the menu.

MENU Press **MENU**.

Select "**Media**".

Select or deselect "**TA**" to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic announcements.

Select the playback mode: "**Normal**", "**Random**", "**Random all**" or "**Repeat**".

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

SRC / Press **SRC/TEL** repeatedly to select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Management of the controls is via the portable device.

! Do not connect the same device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB socket at the same time.

CD player

Insert a CD in the player; play begins automatically.
Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player. The audio system searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

SRC / Press the **SRC/TEL** button repeatedly to select "**CD**".

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track in the list.

Press one of these buttons to select the previous or next folder in the order chosen.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

LIST Press **LIST** to display the folder structure of the compilation.

Select a line in the list.

OK Confirm with "**OK**".

Return to the top level of the folder structure to select the type of tracks.

- By **Folders** (CD or USB): all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order without following the folder structure.
- By **Artist** (USB only): all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, in alphabetical order.
- By **Genre** (USB only): all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- By **Playlist** (CD or USB): if playlists have been saved.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play files with ".mp3", ".wma" and ".wav" extensions on a CD and can play files with ".ogg" extension only on USB.

File names should have less than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. " ?; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

The playlists accepted on CD, MP3, iPod and USB connection are types ".m3u" and ".wpl".
The system can recognise up to 5,000 files in 500 folders on 8 levels.

On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels with a maximum of 192 folders. However, it is recommended that the number of levels is limited to 2 so as to reduce the time taken to access and play the CD.
The folder structure is not observed during playback.

Do not connect a hard disk or USB device other than audio players to the USB socket. This may cause damage to your installation.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted to FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on a telephone to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

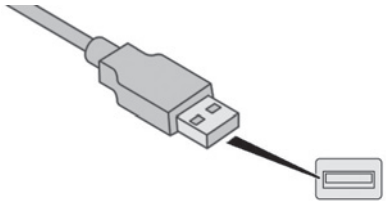
Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section.

In the "**Bluetooth: Audio**" menu, select the telephone to be connected.
The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

SRC / Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SRC/TEL** button.
In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

The control of common tracks is possible via the audio system control buttons and the steering mounted controls, if the telephone supports the function.
Contextual information can be displayed in the screen.
The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players



Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Management of the device is via the audio system controls.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is set as visible to all (refer to the telephone user guide).

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Bluetooth**".

Select "**Search**".

A window is displayed with "**Searching for device**".

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check the user guide for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

In the list, select the telephone to pair.

OK Confirm with "**OK**".

Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

In some cases, the Bluetooth address of the telephone may appear instead of the name of the telephone.

A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: choose a 4-digit code.

OK Confirm with "**OK**".

A message is displayed on the screen of the telephone: enter the same code and confirm.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.

A message appears on the screen to confirm that the connection is successful.

i Pairing can also be initiated from the telephone by searching for the Bluetooth devices detected.

The directory and the call list can be accessed after the necessary synchronisation period (if the telephone is compatible).
Automatic connection must be configured in the telephone to allow the connection each time the vehicle is started.

Managing connections

MENU — Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Bluetooth**".

Select "**BT management**"/"**Manage connections**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.



Indicates connection of the audio profile.



Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.

In the list, select a telephone to pair.

OK — Confirm with "**OK**".

Select or deselect:
- "**Tel.**": hands-free connection
- "**Audio**": play audio files

OK — "**OK**" to confirm the choice.

"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

It is not possible to pair more than 5 telephones, Press **MENU** and select "**Bluetooth**". Select "**BT management**"/"**Manage connections**". If 5 telephones are already paired, select the telephone to delete by pressing "**OK**" and selecting "**Delete**" (refer to the "Managing connections" section).

Making a call

From the directory

MENU — Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Telephone**".

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Directory**".

Select the desired number.

OK — Confirm with "**OK**" to start the call.

Making a call

Recently called numbers

(Depending on the compatibility of the phone)

SRC / — Press and hold **SRC/TEL** to display the calls list.

For access to the call list, it is also possible to press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**", then select "**Call**" and finally select "**Calls list**".

In the list of calls, select from: "**Missed calls**", "**Dialled calls**" or "**Answered calls**".

Scroll through the calls list.

OK — Confirm with "**OK**".

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous or next page in the list.

OK "**OK**" starts the call.

The calls list includes calls sent and received in the vehicle using the connected telephone.
It is possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

SRC / Press **SRC/TEL**.

or

select "**YES**" to accept the call,

or

select "**NO**" to reject the call.

Pressing and holding the back button,

or

SRC / **SRC/TEL** also rejects an incoming call.

Managing calls

Hang up



In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

SRC / Pressing and holding **SRC/TEL** also ends the call.

Secret – Mute

(so that the caller cannot hear)

In the contextual menu:



Select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.



Select "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on again.

Combined mode

(to leave the vehicle without ending the call)

In the contextual menu:



Select "**Combined mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone.



Select "**Combined mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

In some cases, the combined mode has to be activated from the telephone.
The Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically if the ignition has been switched off, then on again (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

Audio settings



Press ♬ to display the audio settings menu.
Press ♬ to go to the next setting.

The settings available are:
- AMBIENCE, BASS, TREBLE and LOUDNESS.
- BALANCE (left/right balance), FADER (front/rear balance)
- SOUND DIST. (driver or passenger).
- AUTO VOLUME.

The distribution, or spatialisation of sound, is an audio process which allows the sound quality to be improved according to the setting chosen, corresponding to the position of the listeners in the vehicle.

The AMBIENCE, TREBLE and BASS audio settings are different and independent for each sound source.

Configuration

Display and language settings

MENU Press the **MENU** button.


Select "**Config.**".


Select "**Display**" to activate or deactivate scrolling text.


Select "**Language**" to modify the display language.


Select "**Version**" for information on the software.


Select "**System**" when you want to install an update. Information can be obtained from a PEUGEOT dealer.


Select "**Unit**" to modify the units for temperature (Celsius, Fahrenheit).

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (volume, bass, treble, ambience, loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (volume, bass, treble, ambience, loudness) are adapted to the sources being listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (bass, treble, front-rear balance, left-right balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When changing the settings for treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, treble and bass are reset to zero.	Choosing an ambience imposes settings for treble and bass. Modifying one without the other is only possible with a personalised ambience	Modify the treble and bass settings or the ambience setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected.	Choosing the "driver" distribution setting imposes a balance setting.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired sound quality.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The surroundings (hills, buildings, tunnels, underground parking, etc.) are blocking reception, including in RDS tracking mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
Traffic announcement TA is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the SRC/TEL button to return to the waveband (FM1 or FM2) on which the stations are stored.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format that cannot be played by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Media" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Because of low quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.

The "USB peripheral error" or "Peripheral not recognised" message appears on the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised.	Use only USB memory sticks formatted to FAT 32 (28-bit file allocation table).
A telephone connects automatically, disconnecting another telephone.	Automatic connection overrides manual connection.	Modify the telephone settings to remove automatic connection.
The iPod is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	The iPod is of a generation that is not compatible with the USB.	
The hard disk or device is not recognised when connecting to the USB socket.	Some hard disks and devices need a power supply greater than is provided by the audio system.	Connect the device to the 230 V socket, the 12 V socket or an external power supply. **Caution**: ensure that the device does not transmit a voltage greater than 5 V (risk of destruction of the system).
When streaming, the sound cuts out momentarily.	Some telephones prioritise connection of the "hands-free" profile.	Delete the "hands-free" connection profile to improve streaming.
In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.	In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.	
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

PEUGEOT Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	8
Media	9
Telephone	10
Settings	16
Frequently asked questions	18

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.

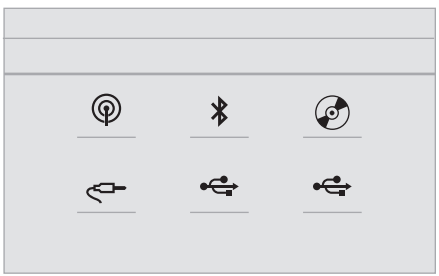
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:
- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Reminder of the privacy information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.



Selecting the sound source (depending on equipment):
- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1





Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2





Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

OK

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

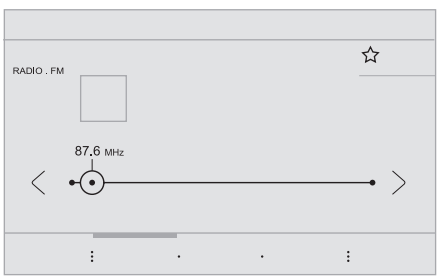
Access configurable equipment.



Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

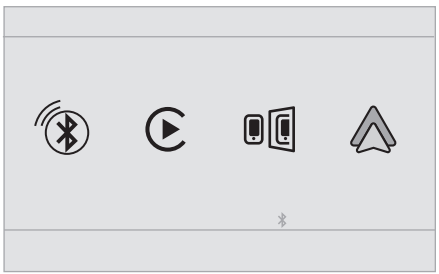
Select an audio source or radio station.



Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

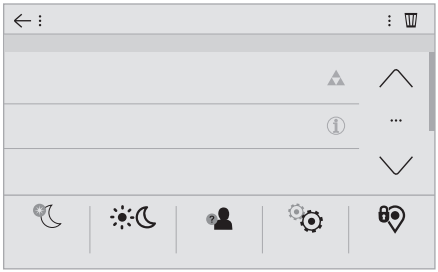
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

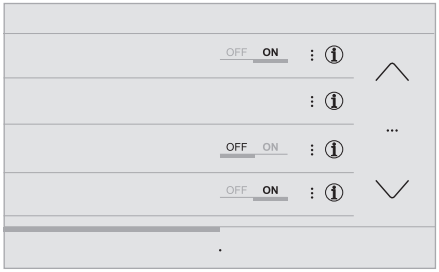
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Driving

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

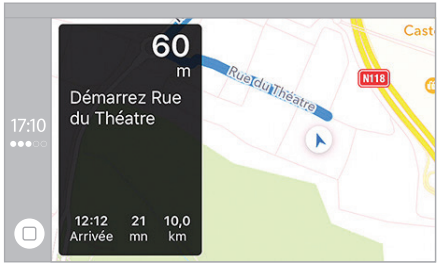
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

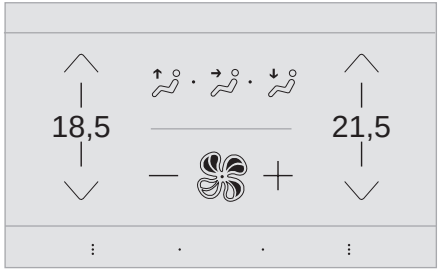
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB socket.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search and select a recipient.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the basket alongside the selected message to delete it.

Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the basket to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Changing waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

FM

Press "**Band**" to change waveband.

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is filled in, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**INFO**"/"**NEWS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: the Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB tracking**".



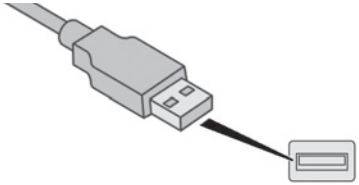
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

If "FM-DAB tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

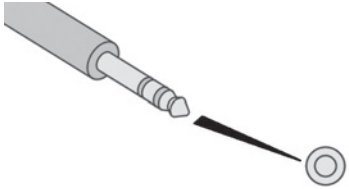
! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Operation of controls is via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts); you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist.
To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ?.; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB socket(s) compatible with the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper banner.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle's screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.
As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons in the upper banner.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on your telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established without any action on your part (with Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the user guide for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**TEL**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Parking the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or make a long press

on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or

Make a long press

on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Setting profiles

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0 Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjusting brightness

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Press the "**Privacy**" tab,

or

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the privacy data mode.

Activate or deactivate:
- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
- "**Data sharing only**"
- "**Sharing data and the vehicle position**"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic text scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.	Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.	Use authentic USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.

PEUGEOT Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	3
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	13
Applications	16
Radio	21
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	22
Media	23
Telephone	25
Settings	29
Frequently asked questions	32

The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

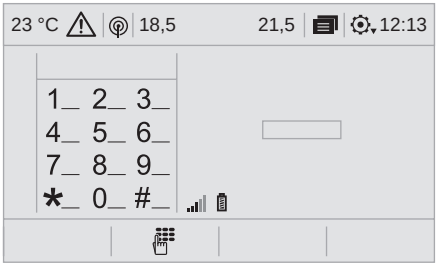
Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

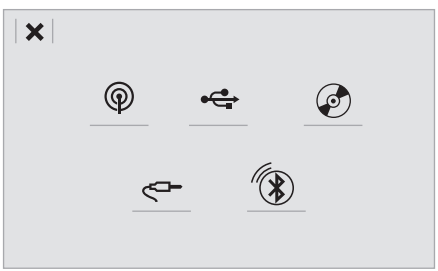
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:
- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):
- FM/DAB*/AM* radio stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD Player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast* (streaming).



* depending on equipment.

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Depending on model.

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Mute/restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Decrease volume.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

OK

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

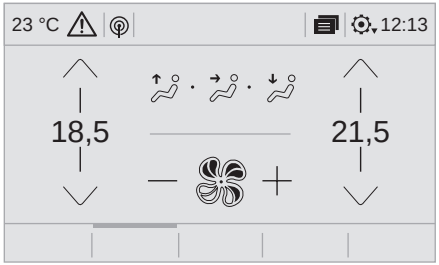
Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

Air conditioning

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Connected navigation

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



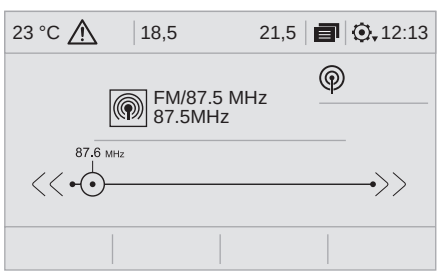
Applications

Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.



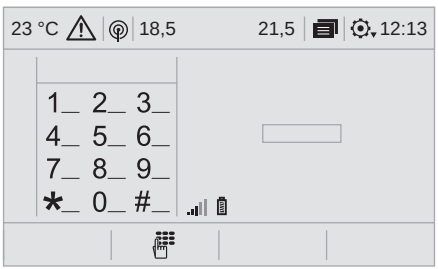
Radio Media

Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



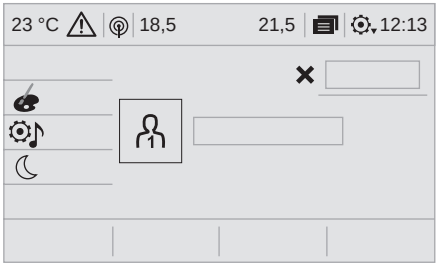
Telephone

Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.



Settings

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Vehicle

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls

Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:
- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

First steps

Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"**Navigate to address, 11 Regent Street, London**".
Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"**Play artist, Madonna**".
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"**Call David Miller**".

! The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city" are not available.

Information – Using the system



Press the Push To Talk voice command button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask me to do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "beginner" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say "telephone help", "navigation help", "media help" or "radio help". To find out more about how to use voice commands, you can say "voice commands help".
Voice commands help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, say "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, tennis club", or "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London" or just "navigate home". To see points of interest on the map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol stations". For more information, say "guidance help".
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, you can say "remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". Say "navigation help" to learn more commands.
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop guidance	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Tune to radio station <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example, say "tune to station Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number", for example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "song", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing".
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" or "listen to" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say, for example, "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

Media voice commands are only available with a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be made from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call using a number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 07776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a message, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, say "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of contacts or calls, say "display contacts" or "display calls". For more information on messages, you can say "help with messages".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call voicemail*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text messages" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be made from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
Send quick message to <...>	To hear your messages, say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a message, there's a set of pre-recorded quick messages. Just use the quick message name and say, for example, "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". You'll find the list of quick messages in the telephone menu. You can say "call" or "send a message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list, say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".
Listen to most recent message*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Zoom out/in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.



Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

To GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.

A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Press this button to start navigation.

Or

Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR

Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And

Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle

OR

Network connection provided by the user

Connected navigation connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.
Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle

The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance call" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection

Connect a USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection

Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Applications" section).

Restrictions of use:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (option).

The processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with shared interests, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Map**".

Activate or deactivate:
- "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**"
- "**Authorise sending information**"

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select "**Alerts**".

Activate or deactivate "**Warn of danger zones**".

Select this button.

Activate: **Give an audible warning**

! For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: "**Authorise sending information**".

i The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger zones"

! To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you must check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the upper banner of the touch screen

Select the "**Type**" option to choose the type of "Danger zone".

Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger zones" pack updates

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**"/"**System administration**".

Select the "**System info**" tab.

Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select "**Update(s) due**".

i You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.
The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Displaying the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

Internet browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet browser**" function.

Press "**Internet browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto**functions.

Applications



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle's screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.
As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
The operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle's screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and compatible with the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper banner.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
The operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the Android Auto function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons in the upper banner.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Bluetooth connection®

As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on your telephone.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi connection sharing**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

To protect against unauthorised access and to make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the slider for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.
This behaviour is normal in propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station tracking**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.
However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory.
This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station tracking**".

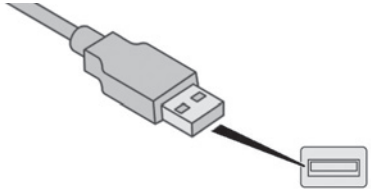
OK Press "**OK**".

If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB socket



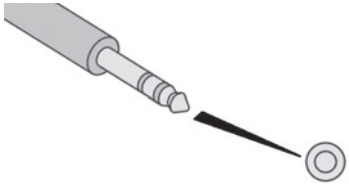
Insert the USB memory stick in the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Operation of controls is via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on model/depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts).
The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ?.; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or

Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on your telephone.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the user guide for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Received**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Settings

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambiences**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiences) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".
The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i Onboard audio: the Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Setting profiles

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the operations must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB socket.
Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

i The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to reinitialise the profile selected.

! Reinitialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambiences**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic text scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**"/"**System administration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to define the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Colour schemes

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Colour schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	When not navigating, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "MEDIA" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used in scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass, Treble, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

A

ABS 60
Accessories 58
Active City Brake....96-97
AdBlue® 18, 22, 117-118
Additive, Diesel 16
Adjusting headlamps 54
Adjusting head restraints 38
Adjusting seats....38
Adjusting the air distribution 43-45
Adjusting the air flow....43-45
Adjusting the date 26, 17, 31
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 36
Adjusting the seat belt height 63
Adjusting the temperature 43-45
Adjusting the time 26, 17, 31
Advice on driving 80-81
Airbags 15, 65, 67-68
Airbags, curtain....66-67
Airbags, front....65, 67, 69
Airbags, lateral....66-67
Air conditioning 6, 41, 43
Air conditioning, automatic 43-45
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 44
Air conditioning, manual 45
Air intake 43-45
Alarm....28, 33-34
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)....60
Anti-slip regulation (ASR) 60
Anti-theft/Immobiliser 29
Apple CarPlay connection 12, 16
Armrest....48
Armrest, front 39
Assistance, emergency braking 60
Assistance call 59-60
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 5, 9, 24

B

Battery....110, 114, 137-140
Battery, charging....139
Battery, remote control 31
Blind, sunroof 47-48
BlueHDi....22, 117, 121
Bluetooth (hands-free) 6, 13-14, 25-26
Bluetooth (telephone)..... 13-15, 25-27
Bonnet 111
Boot....32
Brake discs....83, 116
Brake lamps 132
Brakes 12, 83, 116
Braking, automatic emergency 96-97
Brightness....16
Bulbs 129
Bulbs (changing) 129-130, 132

C

Cable, audio....23
Cable, Jack 23
Cap, fuel filler 108
Capacity, fuel tank 107-108
CD 9, 23-24
CD, MP3....3-5, 9, 23-24
Central locking 28
Changing a bulb....129-130, 132
Changing a fuse....133-136
Changing a wheel 125-126
Changing a wiper blade 57
Changing the remote control battery....31
Checking the engine oil level....21
Checking the levels.... 112-114
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) ...122, 124
Checks 83, 112, 114-116
Checks, routine 83, 114-116
Child lock....79
Children....72, 74-76
Children (safety)....79
Child seats 64, 68, 72, 78
Child seats, conventional....72
Child seats, ISOFIX 74-76
Closing the boot 32
Connection, Bluetooth 13-15, 19, 25-27
Connection, MirrorLink 11-12, 17
Connection, Wi-Fi network 20
Connectivity 49
Control, back-up boot release 32
Control, back-up door release 30-31
Control, heated seats....39
Controls, steering mounted 5
Control stalk, lighting 51, 54
Control stalk, wiper 55-57
Courtesy lamp....46-47
Cruise control....93-96

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) – Digital radio 8, 22
Date (setting)..... 26, 17, 31
Daytime running lamps....54, 130-131
Daytime running lamps, LED....130-131
Deactivating the passenger airbag.....65, 68-69
Deadlocking 29-30
Defrosting....45-46
Demisting 45-46
Dials and gauges 8-9
Dimensions 147
Dipstick....21, 112-113
Direction indicators....52, 54, 130, 132
Display screen, instrument panel 8-9, 86
Driving economically....6
Dynamic stability control (DSC)..... 14, 60-62

E

Earth point, remote 112
Eco-driving (advice) 6
Economy mode 110
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 60
Electronic stability control (ESC) 60
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 60
Emergency call 59-60
Emissions control system, SCR 117
Energy economy mode 110
Engine, Diesel 13, 106, 121
Engine, petrol 106, 112
Engine compartment 112
Engines 142-143, 145
Engine self-diagnosis 15
Environment 6, 31

F

Filling the AdBlue® tank 118
Filling the fuel tank 106-108
Filter, air 115
Filter, Diesel fuel 112
Filter, oil 115
Filter, particle 114-115
Filter, passenger compartment 41, 115
Fitting a wheel 127-129
Fitting roof bars 110-111
Fittings, boot 49
Fittings, interior 48
Flap, fuel filler 107-108
Foglamp, rear 18, 51, 132
Foglamps 130
Foglamps, front 51, 55, 131, 133
Frequency (radio) 21-22
Fuel 6, 106
Fuel consumption 6, 25
Fuel tank 107-108
Fusebox, dashboard 133-136
Fusebox, engine compartment 133-136
Fuses 133-136

G

Gauge, fuel 107-108
Gearbox, automatic 84-85, 87-89, 116
Gearbox, manual 83, 87-89, 116
Gear lever 6
Gear lever, manual gearbox 83
Gear shift indicator 86
G.P.S. 12

H

Hazard warning lamps 58, 121
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation 58
Headlamps, automatic illumination 51-53
Headlamps, dipped beam 51, 130
Headlamps, halogen 129-130
Headlamps, main beam 19, 51, 130-131
Head restraints, front 38
Head restraints, rear 41
Heating 6
Hill start assist 87

I

Identification, vehicle 148
Ignition 82, 28
Ignition switch 81-82
Immobiliser, electronic 82
Indicator, AdBlue® range 22
Indicator, coolant temperature 21
Indicator, engine oil level 21, 113
Indicators, direction 52, 130
Inflating tyres 116
Inflating tyres (using the kit) 122, 124
Input, auxiliary 3
Instrument panels 8-9
Internet browser 16
ISOFIX 75
ISOFIX mountings 74

J

Jack 125-126, 23
Jump starting 138

K

Key 28-31
Key with remote control 28, 82
Kit, hands-free 6, 13-14, 25-26
Kit, temporary puncture repair 122, 124

L

Labels, identification 148
Lamps, parking 54
LEDs – Light-emitting diodes 54, 129
Level, AdBlue® 114
Level, brake fluid 113
Level, Diesel additive 114
Level, engine coolant 21, 114
Level, engine oil 21, 112-113
Level, screenwash fluid 114
Levels and checks 112-114
Light-emitting diodes – LEDs 54, 129
Lighting, cornering 55
Lighting, guide-me home 29, 53
Lighting, interior 46-47
Lighting, mood 47
Lighting dimmer 27
Loading 6, 110
Load reduction mode 109
Locating your vehicle 29

Locking 28-29
Locking from the inside 30
Locking the boot 32
Locking the doors 30, 33
Low fuel level 107-108

M

Maintenance, routine 6
Map reading lamps 46-47
Markings, identification 148
Mat 48
Menu 12
Menus (audio) 4-5, 3-5
Messages 28
Messages, quick 28
Mirror, rear view 37
Mirrors, door 36-37
Misfuel prevention 108
Mountings, ISOFIX 74
MP3 CD 3-5

N

Number plate lamps 133

O

Obstacle detection 98
Oil, engine 112-113
Oil change 112-113
Oil consumption 112-113
Opening the bonnet 111
Opening the boot 32
Opening the fuel filler flap 107
Opening the panoramic roof blind 47-48

P

Pads, brake 83, 116
Paint colour code 148
Parcel shelf, rear 50
Park Assist 100
Parking brake 82-83, 116
Parking sensors, audible and visual 98
Parking sensors, front 98-99
Parking sensors, rear 98
PEUGEOT Connect Nav 1
PEUGEOT Connect Radio 1
Plates, identification 148
Player, Apple® 9, 24
Player, MP3 CD 3-5, 23
Player, USB 49, 3, 3, 9, 23
Power steering 14
Pre-heater, Diesel 13
Pressures, tyres 116, 125, 148
Pre-tensioning seat belts 64
Priming the fuel system 121
Profiles 16, 30
Protecting children 65, 68-69, 72, 74-76, 78
Puncture 122, 124

R

Radio 2, 2, 6-7, 9, 21, 24
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB) 8, 22
Range 25
Range, AdBlue 22-23
RDS 7, 21-22
Rear screen, demisting 46
Recharging the battery 139
Recirculation, air 43-45
Reduction of electrical load 109
Regeneration of the particle filter 115
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system 90
Reinitialising the remote control 32
Reminder, key in ignition 82
Reminder, lighting on 52
Remote control 28-29
Removing a wheel 127-129
Removing the mat 48
Replacing bulbs 129-130, 132
Replacing fuses 133-136
Replacing the air filter 115
Replacing the oil filter 115
Replacing the cabin filter 115
Reservoir, screenwash 114
Resetting the service indicator 20-21
Reversing camera 100
Reversing lamp 132
Reversing lamps 132
Roof bars 110-111
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 121

S

Safety, children 65, 68-69, 72, 74-76, 78
Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) 117
Screen, instrument panel 24
Screen menu map 12
Screenwash 56
Screenwash, rear 57
Seat, rear bench 40
Seat belts 12, 63-64, 72
Seats, front 38
Seats, heated 39
Seats, rear 40-41
Selector, gear 85
Serial number, vehicle 148
Service (warning lamp) 13
Service indicator 20
Servicing 20
Settings, system 16, 30
Sidelamps 51, 54, 130-132
Side repeater 132
Snow chains 108-109
Socket, 12 V accessory 49

Socket, auxiliary....9, 23
Socket, Jack....23
Socket, USB....49, 3, 3, 5, 9, 23
Sockets, audio....3
Sockets, auxiliary....3
Speed limiter....91-93, 95-96
Starting a Diesel engine....106
Starting the engine....81-82
Starting the vehicle....80-81, 84-85
Starting using another battery....138
Station, radio....2, 2, 6-7, 21-22
Stay, bonnet....111
Steering lock....82
Steering mounted controls, audio....3, 3
Steering wheel, adjustment....36
STOP (warning lamp)....11
Stopping the vehicle....80-81, 85
Stop & Start....19, 26, 42, 46, 87-89, 100, 107, 111, 115, 137
Storage....39, 48
Stowing rings....49
Sunroof....47-48
Sunshine sensor....41
Switching off the engine....81-82
Synchronising the remote control....32

T

Tables of fuses....133-136
Tank, fuel....107-108
Telephone....13-15, 25-29
Temperature, coolant....11, 21
Third brake lamp....133
Three flashes (direction indicators)....52
Time (setting)....26, 17, 31
TMC (Traffic info)....13
Tools....125-126, 133-136, 141
Touch screen....49, 91, 1, 1
Towed loads....142
Towing another vehicle....140-141
Towing device....80-81, 109
Traction control (ASR)....14, 60-62
Traffic information (TA)....3
Traffic information (TMC)....13
Trailer....80-81, 109
Triangle, warning....121
Trip computer....24-26
Tyres....6, 116
Tyre under-inflation detection....15, 89, 91, 125

U

Under-inflation (detection)....15, 89, 91, 125
Unlocking....28
Unlocking from the inside....30
Unlocking the boot....28, 32
Unlocking the doors....28, 30, 33
Updating the date....26, 17, 31
Updating the time....26, 17, 31
USB....3, 3, 9, 23-24

V

Ventilation....6, 41, 45
Voice commands....5-10

W

Warning and indicator lamps....10
Warning lamp, airbag....15
Warning lamp, braking system....12
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater....13
Warning lamp, low fuel level....14
Warning lamp, parking brake....12
Warning lamp, Service....13
Warning lamp, STOP....11
Weights....142-143, 145
Wheel, spare....116, 125-126
Window controls....34
Wiper, rear....57
Wiper blades (changing)....57
Wipers....19, 55-56
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive....56

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

PEUGEOT

CONDUENT 4Dconcept xerox

AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON
http://www.peugeot.com
Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S.NANTERRE : 552 144 503

Printed in the EU
Anglais
05-18

www.peugeot.com

ANG. 18208.0040



Radio

RD6-HANDS-FREE SYSTEM*

For safety reasons, the driver should only carry out complicated adjustments if the vehicle is stationary.
The radio works with the car running or in the accessories position.

INDEX

01 What to do first	**P. 194**
02 Radio	**P. 195**
03 Audio	**P. 198**
04 Making a call	**P. 203**
05 Audio adjustments	**P. 209**
06 Configuration	**P. 210**
07 Steering wheel controls	**P. 211**
Frequently-asked questions	**P. 211**

* According to version or country of sale.

01 WHAT TO DO FIRST

Selecting the source:
FM1, FM2, AM, AUX, Streaming.
Press for a few moments to:
-access the call list of the telephone connected.

Access to main menu.
Controlling audio options: sound mode, treble, bass, loudness, left/right balance, automatic volume.

Display of stations stored, tracks or tracks on USB.
Press for a few seconds to: update the list of stations stored.

Automatic search for station stored, MP3 track or browse a list.
Radio: Press for a few seconds to: store a station.
"UP" to accept a call.
"DOWN" to reject a call.

Volume control.



Auxiliary socket (AUX).

On/off

Confirmation or Play/ Pause.

Automatic search for radio frequency up/down.
Selecting previous/next MP3 track.
Browsing a list.
Press for a few seconds to: fast forward or rewind.

Manual search for of frequencies one by one up/down.
Select from MP3 list previous / next.
Browsing a list.

Change the message displayed on the first line of the radio.

02 RADIO

RADIO

External factors (hills, buildings, tunnels, parking lots, basements, etc.) may hinder reception.
This is normal in radio wave propagation and does not mean that the car radio has failed.

STORING AND SELECTING A STATION*

1



Press **SRC/TEL** several times and select an FM1, FM2 or AM frequency.



2



Press a button for several seconds to store the station being listened to. The name of the station is displayed and a beep confirms that it has been stored.



Press a button to listen to the station stored.

MANAGE THE LIST*



Press **LIST** for a few seconds to build or update the list of stations; audio reception is momentarily interrupted.



1



Press **LIST** to display the list of stations stored.



2



Select the radio desired and then confirm by pressing **"OK".**



3



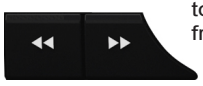
Press**"UP"/"DOWN"** to browse the list.

* According to version or country of sale.

02 RADIO

SEARCH FOR STATIONS*

1



Press one of the buttons to automatically search for frequencies.



2



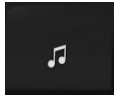
Press one of the buttons for a fine search of frequencies.

*According to version or country of sale.

02 RADIO

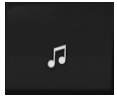
LISTEN TO TA MESSAGES*

The TA function* (traffic announcements) gives TA announcements priority*. You need to be tuned into a radio station that broadcasts these types of announcements for this function to work. When a traffic announcement is received, the function being listened to at the time (Radio, CD, Jukebox, etc.) is automatically interrupted so that you can hear the TA announcement*. After you have heard the announcement, the car stereo returns to the function you were listening to.

1 

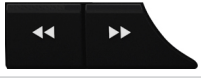
Press **MENU** to select **"RADIO"** and then select or deselect **"TA"** to turn the traffic announcement function on or off.



2 

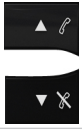
Press the **MENU** button for a few seconds.



3 

Press one of the buttons until **TA** appears and turn the traffic announcement function on or off.



4 

Pressing one of the buttons on the lower part of the screen will display the **TA** icon when the function is switched on.

INFORMATION DISPLAY*

Info text comprises information broadcast by the radio station that includes details of the station and the music you are listening to.

1 

Press the **DISP** button to change radio information (when available) and outside temperature.



* According to version or country of sale.

03 AUDIO

USB*

INFORMATION AND RECOMMENDATIONS*

The stereo only reads the following types of files: ". mp3", ".wma", ".wav", ".aac-lc".

A high compression rate may affect sound quality.

Playlists accepted in MP3, iPod and USB connection are ". m3u" and ".wpl".
The number of files recognized is limited to 5,000 on 500 lists at a maximum of eight levels.

The same disc or the USB can read up to 1700 MP3 files on up to a maximum of six directories.
However, it is recommendable to use a maximum of two levels for the time it takes to read the USB.
The folder menu is skipped when the USB is being read.

Do not connect hard drives to the USB port. This may damage the equipment.

* According to version or country of sale.

03 AUDIO

USB*

LISTENING TO A COMPILATION*

Insert a USB.

The system creates read lists (temporary memory), which may take between a few seconds and several minutes.
Read lists are updated whenever the engine is turned off or when a USB is connected.
Reading begins automatically after a certain time that depends on the capacity of the USB.

When turned on for first time, the classification proposed is classification by folder.
The system subsequently retains the classification already chosen.

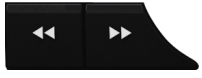
1



To listen to a USB already inserted, press the SRC button and select"USB".



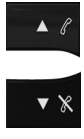
2



Press one of the buttons to select the previous or next track.



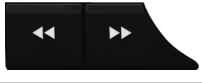
3



Press one of the buttons to select the previous or next list, depending on the classification chosen.
When changing the list or folder, the name of the list or folder will be displayed for two seconds before the name of the track is displayed.

4

Press one of the buttons and keep it pressed to fast-forward or rewind.





* According to version or country of sale.

03 AUDIO

USB*

5



Press **LIST** to display the list of compilation folders.



6



Select a line on the list and press **"OK".**



To choose a track/song, press **"UP/ DOWN".**

7

To change folder, press **"UP"** until you find the item on the list and then press one of the "<< >>" buttons SDUD to choose the folder from the list and press **"OK".**

8



Choose play mode:

- Random mode: Press the **"RDM"** button.
- Repeat mode: Press the **"RPT"** button.





- **Folder** (USB): all folders with GH audio files recognized by the peripheral device, classified in alphabetical order, skipping the list.
- **Artist** (USB only): all of the names of artistes on the ID3 tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- **Genres** (IPOD only): all genres defined Tag.
- **Playlist** (USB or IPOD): according to the playlists entered.

9



Press **LIST**, to display list of songs.



10



Press **LIST** for a few seconds to display list of criteria.



11



"UP/DOWN" to selection criteria between folder/playlist/genre/artist.

* According to version or country of sale.

03 AUDIO

IPOD® or AUXILIARY INPUT*

You may listen to audio files on a portable Mass Storage reader* through the speakers of the vehicle by connecting to the USB port (cable not supplied).

! The peripheral device is controlled by the audio system, see paragraph **"USB".**

The iPod® software must be updated frequently to ensure a good connection.

! Reading lists are as defined in the iPod®.

! The iPod® must be generation 4 or higher.

You may connect a team notebook (Mp3 reader) to the auxiliary input.

! Do not connect the same device to the USB input and the auxiliary socket at the same time.

1 Connect the portable device (MP3 reader...) to the auxiliary socket using a cable adapted, not supplied.



2 Press the SOURCE button several times and select AUX.



* According to version or country of sale.

03 AUDIO

STREAMING-READING AUDIO FILES THROUGH BLUETOOTH®*

ACCORDING TO THE COMPATIBILITY OF THE TELEPHONE

Streaming allows you to listen to audio files on your telephone through the vehicle's speakers.
The telephone must be able to manage the right Bluetooth® profiles.

1



Switch the telephone on: see the MAKING A CALL paragraph.

2



Select the streaming source on **SRC/TEL** Reading is piloted through the radio commands.
Contextual information can be displayed on the screen.



! In some cases, reading of audio files should be started from the telephone.

! Listening depends on the output quality of the telephone.

* According to version or country of sale.

04 MAKING A CALL

CONNECTING A TELEPHONE/FIRST CALL*

Services available depend on the network, SIM card and compatibility with Bluetooth devices used.
Check the manual of your telephone and contact your operator to see which services are available.

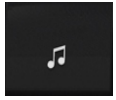
For safety reasons, make sure that the vehicle is stationary before attempting to connect a Bluetooth® telephone to the Bluetooth® hands-free function of your car stereo, as this operation requires close attention on the part of the driver.

Visit www.peugeot.com for further information (compatability, complementary assistance, etc.).

You cannot connect more than five telephones.
Press **MENU** for a few seconds and select **"Choose"**.
If five telephones are already connected, select the phone to delete by pressing **"UP"/"DOWN"** and press **"Delete"** (see the "Call management") paragraph.

1 Turn the Bluetooth® function of your telephone on and make sure that you are visible to everyone (see instructions of your telephone).



2 

Press **MENU** and then select "Connect".



3 

Select **"Search".**

4 A screen is displayed with the word **"Searching".**

5 

Select the phone to connect from the list and confirm by pressing **"OK".**
You can only connect one telephone at a time.



* According to version or country of sale.

04 MAKING A CALL

In some cases, the Bluetooth® address may appear instead of the name of the telephone.

6



When the **telephone** is selected, a connection code appears on the screen.
Use the **volume control** on the radio to select the number; then use the"< < > >" buttons to enter the next number.
When you enter the last digit, confirm by pressing **"OK".**

7

A message appears on the screen of your telephone: enter the same code and confirm.



In case of failure, the number of attempts is limited.

8

Accept the connection to the telephone.

9

A message appears on the screen to confirm the success of the connection.

!

The connection can also be made using the phone by searching for Bluetooth® devices detected.

!

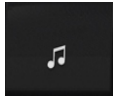
The list and call log are accessible after synchronization (if the telephone is compatible).
Automatic calls must be configured on the telephone to allow calls every time you start the vehicle.
This should be completed in thirty seconds; if not, start again.

* According to version or country of sale.

04 MAKING A CALL

CONNECTION MANAGEMENT*

1



Press **MENU**, then select **"Choose".**



2



The list of telephones connected is displayed.





Shows telephone connection.



Shows source selected.

3



Select a telephone and press **"OK".**



4



Then select or cancel selection:
- Connection to connect a telephone.

To confirm selection **OK** made.
Select **"Delete"** to delete the connection.



* According to version or country of sale.

04 MAKING A CALL

TRANSFER A CALL - MOST RECENT NUMBERS DIALED*

1



Press **SRC/TEL** continuously to display call log.



i To access the call log, you may also press MENU and then select Histor when your telephone is already connected.

2



Browsing the call log.

4



Previous or next page of call log.



5



Press **"OK"** to start call.



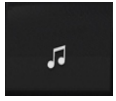
i The call log includes calls made and received to and from the vehicle in association with the telephone used.
You may transfer a call directly from your telephone, park the vehicle as a safety measure.

* According to version or country of sale.

04 MAKING A CALL

TRANSFERRING A CALL - FROM THE LIST*

1



Press **MENU** and select **"Directory"** when the telephone already appears as connected.



2



Select the number desired and confirm.
Press **"Call"** to make the call.



RECIEVING A CALL*

1

Incoming calls are announced by a ring tone and a message appearing on the screen.

2



Press **"UP"** to select **"ACCEPT"** to accept the call
or
select **"DOWN"** to select **"REJECT"** to reject the call.

* According to version or country of sale.

04 MAKING A CALL

CALL MANAGEMENT*

1a HANGING UP



Select **"DOWN"** from the context menu to end the call.

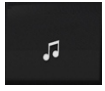
1b SECRET-MUTE
(so that the other person cannot hear)

1c COMBINED MODE
(facility to continue your call when you leave the vehicle)

* According to version or country of sale.

05 AUDIO ADJUSTMENTS

1



Press ♫ to display the audio settings menu.



Press one of the (< < > >) buttons to go to the next setting.

2

The following settings are available:
- ENVIRONMENT: BASS, TREBLE and LOUDNESS.
- EQU ESQ/D (left/right balance), EQU FR/R (front/ rear balance).
- REPART SOM (driver or passenger).
- AUTO VOLUME.

! Sound distribution is a feature that improves sound quality as a function of the setting chosen and the position of listeners in the vehicle.

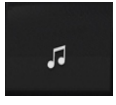
i Audio settings (Environment,, Bass andTreble) are separate and different for each audio function.

* According to version or country of sale.

06 CONFIGURATION

DISPLAY and LANGUAGE*

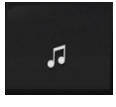
1



Press **MENU** and, then, select **"language"** to change the language displayed.



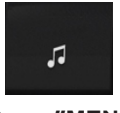
2



Select **"MENU"** and then select "Unit" to change the unit of the outside temperature.



3



Press **"MENU"** and then select **"Scroll"** to activate/deactivate scrolling of information on the screen.



* According to version or country of sale.

07 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

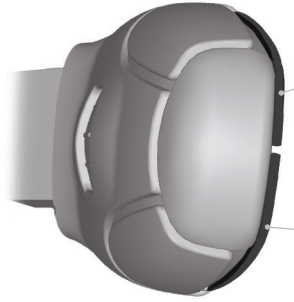
RADIO: go to next radio station on the list.
Press for several seconds to automatically search for a higher frequency.
USB: selecting the next track.
USB: press continuously to fast forward.

SRC/TEL button:
Changes sound source.
Make a call from the number list.
Answer/hang up.
Press for more than two seconds to access number list.



RADIO: switch to previous station on the list.
Press for several seconds to automatically search for a lower frequency.
USB: selecting the previous track.
USB: press continuously to rewind.

Radio: selecting the previous/ next preset station.
Selecting the next item on the number list.



Turning the volume up.

Mute: mute sound by simultaneously pressing the volume up/down buttons.
Turning the mute off: press one of the volume buttons.

Turning the volume down.

* According to version or country of sale.

FREQUENTLY-ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below shows the answers to the most frequently asked questions.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a considerable difference in sound quality between audio functions (radio, USB...).	For ideal sound, audio settings(volume, bass, treble, environment, loudness) may be adapted to the various audio functions, which may cause a difference in audio quality when changing function (radio, USB...).	Check to see if audio settings (volume, bass, treble, ambience, loudness) are adapted to the functions used. It is recommended to adjust audio functions (bass, treble, FR/TR balance, left/right balance) to the middle position, select the musical environment, and set loudness correction to the "on" position.
When adjusting treble and bass, the environment option is not available. Treble and bass reset to zero when changing the environment.	Choosing the environment affects adjustment of treble and bass. You may only adjust one and not the other in a personalized environment.	Adjust treble and bass settings or the environment to obtain the desired audio environment.
Distribution is deselected when adjusting balance.	Choosing the "driver" mode affects balance.	Adjust the balance control or distribution to set the desired audio environment.

* According to version or country of sale.

FREQUENTLY-ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The reception quality of a radio station gets progressively worse or preset stations not work (no sound, 87.5 Mhz displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the radio station or there is no radio station in the area.	Start a new search for the station so that the system may check to see if the radio station is broadcasting on a more powerful signal in the area.
	External factors (hills, buildings, tunnels, parking lots, basements, etc.) may hinder reception.	This is normal in radio wave propagation and does not mean that the car radio has failed.
	There is no aerial or the aerial is damaged (for example, in a carwash or in an underground parking lot).	Ask your PEUGEOT dealer to check the aerial.
The TA traffic announcement is displayed but traffic information is not received.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Select a radio station that broadcasts traffic information. * Availability depends on the country.
Cannot find stored stations (no sound, 87.5 Mhz appears...).	The wavelength selected is not the right one.	Press the SRC/TEL button to find the wavelength (FM1 or FM2) on which stations are stored.

* According to version or country of sale.

FREQUENTLY-ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth® call is cut off.	The battery of the peripheral device is not charged enough.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device. Check the local signal.
The screen displays the message "USB error".	The USB not is recognized. The memory may be damaged.	Format the memory.

* According to version or country of sale.

FREQUENTLY-ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The iPod is not recognized when connected to the USB port.	The generation of the iPod is incompatible with the USB connection.	
The hard disc or peripheral device is not recognized during a call or when connecting to the USB port.	Certain hards discs or peripheral devices need a power supply higher than that provided by the radio.	Connect the peripheral device to an electrical socket, the 12V socket or an external power supply. Attention: make sure that the output voltage of the peripheral device is no more than 5V (risk of system being damaged).
In streaming reading, sound is momentarily muted.	Some telephones give priority to the "hands-free" call profile.	Delete the "hands-free" call profile to improve reading streaming.
In "Random" reading, not all tracks are taken into account.	In "Random" reading, the system can assimilate 999 tracks.	
The car stereo switches off a few minutes after the engine is switched off.	When the engine is turned off, the time for which the car stereo may be used depends on how much the battery is charged. This is normal: the stereo switches to "economy" mode and switches off to conserve the battery of the vehicle.	Start the engine to charge the battery.

* According to version or country of sale.